

# Average-Case Analysis of Algorithms and Data Structures

## L'analyse en moyenne des algorithmes et des structures de données

Jeffrey Scott Vitter<sup>1</sup> and Philippe Flajolet<sup>2</sup>

**Abstract.** This report is a contributed chapter to the *Handbook of Theoretical Computer Science* (North-Holland, 1990). Its aim is to describe the main mathematical methods and applications in the average-case analysis of algorithms and data structures. It comprises two parts: First, we present basic combinatorial enumerations based on symbolic methods and asymptotic methods with emphasis on complex analysis techniques (such as singularity analysis, saddle point, Mellin transforms). Next, we show how to apply these general methods to the analysis of sorting, searching, tree data structures, hashing, and dynamic algorithms. The emphasis is on algorithms for which exact “analytic models” can be derived.

**Résumé.** Ce rapport est un chapitre qui paraît dans le *Handbook of Theoretical Computer Science* (North-Holland, 1990). Son but est de décrire les principales méthodes et applications de l'analyse de complexité en moyenne des algorithmes. Il comprend deux parties. Tout d'abord, nous donnons une présentation des méthodes de dénombrements combinatoires qui repose sur l'utilisation de méthodes symboliques, ainsi que des techniques asymptotiques fondées sur l'analyse complexe (analyse de singularités, méthode du col, transformation de Mellin). Ensuite, nous décrivons l'application de ces méthodes générales à l'analyse du tri, de la recherche, de la manipulation d'arbres, du hachage et des algorithmes dynamiques. L'accent est mis dans cette présentation sur les algorithmes pour lesquels existent des « modèles analytiques » exacts.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dept. of Computer Science, Brown University, Providence, R. I. 02912, USA. Research was also done while the author was on sabbatical at INRIA in Rocquencourt, France, and at Ecole Normale Supérieure in Paris. Support was provided in part by NSF research grant DCR-84-03613, by an NSF Presidential Young Investigator Award with matching funds from an IBM Faculty Development Award and an AT&T research grant, and by a Guggenheim Fellowship.

<sup>2</sup> INRIA, Domaine de Voluceau, Rocquencourt, B. P. 105, 78153 Le Chesnay, France.

## Table of Contents

<b>0. Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1. Combinatorial Enumerations</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1. Overview	5
1.2. Ordinary Generating Functions	7
1.3. Exponential Generating Functions	10
1.4. From Generating Functions to Counting	13
<b>2. Asymptotic Methods</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1. Generalities	15
2.2. Singularity Analysis	17
2.3. Saddle Point Methods	20
2.4. Mellin Transforms	22
2.5. Limit Probability Distributions	25
<b>3. Sorting Algorithms</b>	<b>28</b>
3.1. Inversions	28
3.2. Insertion Sort	31
3.3. Shellsort	31
3.4. Bubble Sort	37
3.5. Quicksort	39
3.6. Radix-Exchange Sort	39
3.7. Selection Sort and Heapsort	40
3.8. Merge Sort	41
<b>4. Recursive Decompositions and Algorithms on Trees</b>	<b>43</b>
4.1. Binary Trees and Plane Trees	43
4.2. Binary Search Trees	51
4.3. Radix-Exchange Tries	57
4.4. Digital Search Trees	60

<b>5. Hashing and Address Computation Techniques . . . . .</b>	<b>62</b>
5.1 Bucket Algorithms and Hashing by Chaining . . . . .	63
5.2 Hashing by Open Addressing . . . . .	76
<b>6. Dynamic Algorithms . . . . .</b>	<b>81</b>
6.1. Integrated Cost and the History Model . . . . .	81
6.2. Size of Dynamic Data Structures . . . . .	83
6.3. Set Union-Find Algorithms . . . . .	87
<b>References . . . . .</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>Index and Glossary . . . . .</b>	<b>97</b>

# Average-Case Analysis of Algorithms and Data Structures

*Jeffrey Scott Vitter and Philippe Flajolet*

## 0. Introduction

Analyzing an algorithm means, in its broadest sense, characterizing the amount of computational resources that an execution of the algorithm will require when applied to data of a certain type. Many algorithms in classical mathematics, primarily in number theory and analysis, were analyzed by eighteenth and nineteenth century mathematicians. For instance, Lamé in 1845 showed that Euclid’s GCD algorithm requires at most  $\approx \log_\phi n$  division steps (where  $\phi$  is the “golden ratio”  $(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$ ) when applied to numbers bounded by  $n$ . Similarly, the well-known quadratic convergence of Newton’s method is a way of describing its complexity/accuracy tradeoff.

This chapter presents analytic methods for average-case analysis of algorithms, with special emphasis on the main algorithms and data structures used for processing nonnumerical data. We characterize algorithmic solutions to a number of essential problems, such as sorting, searching, pattern matching, register allocation, tree compaction, retrieval of multidimensional data, and efficient access to large files stored on secondary memory.

The first step required to analyze an algorithm  $\mathcal{A}$  is to define an *input data model* and a *complexity measure*:

1. Assume that the input to  $\mathcal{A}$  is data of a certain type. Each commonly used data type carries a natural notion of size: the size of an array is the number of its elements; the size of a file is the number of its records; the size of a character string is its length; and so on. An input model is specified by the subset  $\mathbf{I}_n$  of inputs of size  $n$  and by a probability distribution over  $\mathbf{I}_n$ , for each  $n$ . For example, a classical input model for comparison-based sorting algorithms is to assume that the  $n$  inputs are real numbers independently and uniformly distributed in the unit interval  $[0, 1]$ . An equivalent model is to assume that the  $n$  inputs form a random permutation of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .
2. The main complexity measures for algorithms executed on sequential machines are *time utilization* and *space utilization*. These may be either “raw” measures (such as the time in nanoseconds on a particular machine or the number of bits necessary for storing temporary variables) or “abstract” measures (such as the number of comparison operations or the number of disk pages accessed).

**Figure 1.** Methods used in the average-case analysis of algorithms.

Let us consider an algorithm  $\mathcal{A}$  with complexity measure  $\mu$ . The worst-case and best-case complexities of algorithm  $\mathcal{A}$  over  $\mathbf{I}_n$  are defined in an obvious way. Determining the worst-case complexity requires constructing extremal configurations that force  $\mu_n$ , the restriction of  $\mu$  to  $\mathbf{I}_n$ , to be as large as possible.

The *average-case* complexity is defined in terms of the probabilistic input model:

$$\overline{\mu}_n[\mathcal{A}] = \mathbf{E}\{\mu_n[\mathcal{A}]\} = \sum_k k \Pr\{\mu_n[\mathcal{A}] = k\},$$

where  $\mathbf{E}\{.\}$  denotes expected value and  $\Pr\{.\}$  denotes probability with respect to the probability distribution over  $\mathbf{I}_n$ . Frequently,  $\mathbf{I}_n$  is a finite set and the probabilistic model assumes a uniform probability distribution over  $\mathbf{I}_n$ . In that case,  $\overline{\mu}_n[\mathcal{A}]$  takes the form

$$\overline{\mu}_n[\mathcal{A}] = \frac{1}{I_n} \sum_k k J_{nk},$$

where  $I_n = |\mathbf{I}_n|$  and  $J_{nk}$  is the number of inputs of size  $n$  with complexity  $k$  for algorithm  $\mathcal{A}$ . Average-case analysis then reduces to *combinatorial enumeration*.

The next step in the analysis is to express the complexity of the algorithm in terms of standard functions like  $n^\alpha (\log n)^\beta (\log \log n)^\gamma$ , where  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  are constants, so that the analytic results can be easily interpreted. This involves getting *asymptotic estimates*.

The following steps give the route followed by many of the average-case analyses that appear in the literature (see Figure 1):

1. *RECUR*: To determine the probabilities or the expectations in exact form, start by setting up recurrences that relate the behavior of algorithm  $\mathcal{A}$  on inputs of size  $n$  to its behavior on smaller (and similar) inputs.
2. *SOLVE*: Solve previous recurrences explicitly using classical algebra.
3. *ASYMPT*: Use standard real asymptotics to estimate those explicit expressions.

An important way to solve recurrences is via the use of *generating functions*:

4. *GENFUN*: Translate the recurrences into equations involving generating functions. The coefficient of the  $n$ th term of each generating function represents a particular probability or expectation. In general we obtain a set of *functional equations*.
5. *EXPAND*: Solve those functional equations using classical tools from algebra and analysis, then expand the solutions to get the coefficients in explicit form.

The above methods can often be bypassed by the following more powerful methods, which we emphasize in this chapter:

6. *SYMBOL*: Bypass the use of recurrences and translate the set-theoretic definitions of the data structures or underlying combinatorial structures directly into functional equations involving generating functions.
7. *COMPLEX*: Use complex analysis to translate the information available from the functional equations directly into asymptotic expressions of the coefficients of the generating functions.

The symbolic method (*SYMBOL*) is often direct and has the advantage of characterizing the *special functions* that arise from the analysis of a natural class of related algorithms. The *COMPLEX* method provides powerful tools for direct asymptotics from generating functions. It has the intrinsic advantage in many cases of providing asymptotic estimates of the coefficients of functions known *only implicitly* from their functional equations.

In Sections 1 and 2 we develop general techniques for the mathematical analysis of algorithms, with emphasis on the *SYMBOL* and *COMPLEX* methods. Section 1 is devoted to exact analysis and combinatorial enumeration. We present the primary methods used to obtain counting results for the analysis of algorithms, with emphasis on symbolic methods (*SYMBOL*). The main mathematical tool we use is the generating function associated with the particular class of structures. A rich set of combinatorial constructions translates directly into functional relations involving the generating functions. In Section 2 we discuss asymptotic analysis. We briefly review methods from elementary real analysis and then concentrate on complex analysis techniques (*COMPLEX*). There we use analytic properties of generating functions to recover information about their coefficients. The methods are often applicable to functions known only indirectly via functional equations, a situation that presents itself naturally when counting recursively defined structures.

In Sections 3–6, we apply general methods for analysis of algorithms, especially those developed in Sections 1 and 2, to the analysis of a large variety of algorithms and data structures. In Section 3, we describe several important sorting algorithms and apply statistics of inversion tables to the analysis of the iteration-based sorting algorithms. In Section 4, we extend our approach of Section 1 to consider valuations on combinatorial structures, which we use to analyze trees and structures with a tree-like recursive decomposition; this includes plane trees, binary and multidimensional search trees, digital search trees, quick-sort, radix-exchange sort, and algorithms for register allocation, pattern matching, and tree compaction. In Section 5, we present a unified approach to hashing, address calculation techniques, and occupancy problems. Section 6 is devoted to performance measures that span a period of time, such as the expected amortized time and expected maximum data structure space used by an algorithm.

**General References.** Background sources on combinatorial enumerations and symbolic methods include [Goulden and Jackson 1983] and [Comtet 1974]. General coverage of complex analysis appears in [Titchmarsh 1939], [Henrici 1974], and [Henrici 1977], and applications to asymptotics are discussed in [Bender 1974], [Olver 1974], [Bender and Orszag 1978], and [De Bruijn 1981]. Mellin transforms are covered in [Doetsch 1955], and limit probability distributions are studied in [Feller 1971], [Sachkov 1978], and [Billingsley 1986].

For additional coverage of average-case analysis of algorithms and data structures, the reader is referred to Knuth's seminal multivolume work *The Art of Computer Programming* [Knuth 1973a], [Knuth 1981], [Knuth 1973b], and to [Flajolet 1981], [Greene and Knuth 1982], [Sedgewick 1983], [Purdom and Brown 1985], and [Flajolet 1988]. Descriptions of most of the algorithms analyzed in this chapter can be found in Knuth's books, [Gonnet 1984] and [Sedgewick 1988].

# 1. Combinatorial Enumerations

Our main objective in this section is to introduce useful combinatorial constructions that translate directly into generating functions. Such constructions are called *admissible*. In Section 1.2 we examine admissible constructions for ordinary generating functions, and in Section 1.3 we consider admissible constructions for exponential generating functions, which are related to the enumeration of labeled structures.

## 1.1. Overview

The most elementary structures may be enumerated using sum/product rules†

**THEOREM 0** [Sum-Product rule]. *Let  $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}$  be sets with cardinalities  $a, b, c$ . Then*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C} = \mathcal{A} \cup \mathcal{B}, \quad \text{with } \mathcal{A} \cap \mathcal{B} = \emptyset &\implies c = a + b; \\ \mathcal{C} = \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{B} &\implies c = a \cdot b. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the number of binary strings of length  $n$  is  $2^n$ , and the number of permutations of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  is  $n!$ .

In the next order of difficulty, explicit forms are replaced by recurrences when structures are defined in terms of themselves. For example, let  $F_n$  be the number of coverings of the interval  $[1, n]$  by disjoint segments of length 1 and 2. By considering the two possibilities for the last segment used, we get the recurrence

$$F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 2, \quad (1a)$$

with initial conditions  $F_0 = 0$ ,  $F_1 = 1$ . Thus, from the classical theory of linear recurrences, we find the Fibonacci numbers expressed in terms of the golden ratio  $\phi$ :

$$F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^n - \hat{\phi}^n), \quad \text{with } \phi, \hat{\phi} = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}. \quad (1b)$$

This example illustrates recurrence methods (*RECUR*) in (1a) and derivation of explicit solutions (*SOLVE*) in (1b).

Another example, which we shall discuss in more detail in Section 4.1, is the number  $B_n$  of plane binary trees with  $n$  internal nodes [Knuth 1973a]. By considering all possibilities for left and right subtrees, we get the recurrence

$$B_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} B_k B_{n-k-1}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 1, \quad (2a)$$

with the initial condition  $B_0 = 1$ . To solve (2a), we introduce a *generating function* (GF): Let  $B(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} B_n z^n$ . From Eq. (2a) we get

$$B(z) = 1 + z B^2(z), \quad (2b)$$

---

† We also use the sum notation  $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{A} + \mathcal{B}$  to represent the union of  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  when  $\mathcal{A} \cap \mathcal{B} = \emptyset$ .

and solving the quadratic equation for  $B(z)$ , we get

$$B(z) = \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 - 4z}}{2z}. \quad (2c)$$

Finally, the Taylor expansion of  $(1 + x)^{1/2}$  gives us

$$B_n = \frac{1}{n+1} \binom{2n}{n} = \frac{(2n)!}{n!(n+1)!}. \quad (2d)$$

In this case, we started with recurrences (*RECUR*) in (2a) and introduced generating functions (*GENFUN*), leading to (2b); solving and expanding (*EXPAND*) gave the explicit solutions (2c) and (2d). (This example dates back to Euler; the  $B_n$  are called *Catalan numbers*.)

The symbolic method (*SYMBOL*) that we are going to present can be applied to this last example as follows: The class  $\mathcal{B}$  of binary trees is defined recursively by the equation

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\blacksquare\} \cup (\{\circ\} \times \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{B}), \quad (3a)$$

where  $\blacksquare$  and  $\circ$  represent external nodes and internal nodes, respectively. A standard lemma asserts that disjoint unions and cartesian products of structures correspond respectively to sums and products of corresponding generating functions. Therefore, specification (3a) translates term by term directly into the generating function equation

$$B(z) = 1 + z \cdot B(z) \cdot B(z), \quad (3b)$$

which agrees with (2b).

**DEFINITION.** A *class of combinatorial structures*  $\mathcal{C}$  is a finite or countable set together with an integer valued function  $|\cdot|_{\mathcal{C}}$ , called the *size function*, such that for each  $n \geq 0$  the number  $C_n$  of structures in  $\mathcal{C}$  of size  $n$  is finite. The *counting sequence* for class  $\mathcal{C}$  is the integer sequence  $\{C_n\}_{n \geq 0}$ . The *ordinary generating function* (OGF)  $C(z)$  and the *exponential generating function* (EGF)  $\widehat{C}(z)$  of a class  $\mathcal{C}$  are defined, respectively, by

$$C(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} C_n z^n \quad \text{and} \quad \widehat{C}(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} C_n \frac{z^n}{n!}. \quad (4)$$

The coefficient of  $z^n$  in the expansion of a function  $f(z)$  (or simply, the  $n$ th coefficient of  $f(z)$ ) is written  $[z^n]f(z)$ ; we have  $C_n = [z^n]C(z) = n! [z^n]\widehat{C}(z)$ .

The generating functions  $C(z)$  and  $\widehat{C}(z)$  can also be expressed as

$$C(z) = \sum_{\gamma \in \mathcal{C}} z^{|\gamma|} \quad \text{and} \quad \widehat{C}(z) = \sum_{\gamma \in \mathcal{C}} \frac{z^{|\gamma|}}{|\gamma|!}, \quad (5)$$

which can be checked by counting the number of occurrences of  $z^n$  in the sums.

We shall adopt the notational convention that a class (say,  $\mathcal{C}$ ), its counting sequence (say,  $C_n$  or  $c_n$ ), its associated ordinary generating function (say,  $C(z)$  or  $c(z)$ ), and its

associated exponential generating function (say,  $\widehat{C}(z)$  or  $\widehat{c}(z)$ ) are named by the same group of letters.

The basic notion for the symbolic method is that of an *admissible construction* in which the counting sequence of the construction depends only upon the counting sequences of its components (see [Goulden and Jackson 1983], [Flajolet 1981], [Greene 1983]); such a construction thus “translates” over generating functions. It induces an operator of a more or less simple form over formal power series. For instance, let  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be two classes of structures, and let

$$\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{V} \tag{6a}$$

be their cartesian product. If the size of an ordered pair  $w = (u, v) \in \mathcal{W}$  is defined as  $|w| = |u| + |v|$ , then by counting possibilities, we get

$$W_n = \sum_{k \geq 0} U_k V_{n-k}, \tag{6b}$$

so that (6a) has the corresponding (ordinary) generating function equation

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z). \tag{6c}$$

Such a combinatorial (set-theoretic) construction that translates in the manner of (6a)–(6c) is called *admissible*.

## 1.2. Ordinary Generating Functions

In this section we present a catalog of admissible constructions for ordinary generating functions (OGFs). We assume that the size of an element of a disjoint union  $\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} \cup \mathcal{V}$  is inherited from its size in its original domain; the size of a composite object (product, sequence, subset, etc.) is the sum of the sizes of its components.

**THEOREM 1** [Fundamental sum/product theorem]. *The disjoint union and cartesian product constructions are admissible for OGFs:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} \cup \mathcal{V}, \quad \text{with } \mathcal{U} \cap \mathcal{V} = \emptyset &\implies W(z) = U(z) + V(z); \\ \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{V} &\implies W(z) = U(z)V(z). \end{aligned}$$

**PROOF.** Use recurrences  $W_n = U_n + V_n$  and  $W_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} U_k V_{n-k}$ . Alternatively, use Eq. (5) for OGFs, which yields for cartesian products

$$\sum_{w \in \mathcal{W}} z^{|w|} = \sum_{(u,v) \in \mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{V}} z^{|u|+|v|} = \sum_{u \in \mathcal{U}} z^{|u|} \cdot \sum_{v \in \mathcal{V}} z^{|v|}. \quad \blacksquare$$

Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be a class of structures that have positive size. Class  $\mathcal{W}$  is called the *sequence class* of class  $\mathcal{U}$ , denoted  $\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U}^*$ , if  $\mathcal{W}$  is composed of all sequences  $(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k)$  with  $u_j \in \mathcal{U}$ . Class  $\mathcal{W}$  is the (finite) *powerset* of class  $\mathcal{U}$ , denoted  $\mathcal{W} = 2^{\mathcal{U}}$ , if  $\mathcal{W}$  consists of all finite subsets  $\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\}$  of  $\mathcal{U}$  (the  $u_j$  are distinct), for  $k \geq 0$ .

THEOREM 2. *The sequence and powerset constructs are admissible for OGFs:*

$$\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U}^* \quad \Longrightarrow \quad W(z) = \frac{1}{1 - U(z)};$$

$$\mathcal{W} = 2^{\mathcal{U}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad W(z) = e^{\Phi(U)(z)}, \quad \text{where } \Phi(f) = \frac{f(z)}{1} - \frac{f(z^2)}{2} + \frac{f(z^3)}{3} - \dots.$$

PROOF. Let  $\epsilon$  denote the empty sequence. Then, for the sequence class of  $\mathcal{U}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U}^* &\equiv \{\epsilon\} + \mathcal{U} + (\mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{U}) + (\mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{U}) + \dots; \\ W(z) &= 1 + U(z) + U(z)^2 + U(z)^3 + \dots = (1 - U(z))^{-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

The powerset class  $\mathcal{W} = 2^{\mathcal{U}}$  is equivalent to an infinite product:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{W} = 2^{\mathcal{U}} &= \prod_{u \in \mathcal{U}} (\{\epsilon\} + \{u\}); \\ W(z) &= \prod_{u \in \mathcal{U}} (1 + z^{|u|}) = \prod_n (1 + z^n)^{U_n}. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

Computing logarithms and expanding, we get

$$\log W(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} U_n \log(1 + z^n) = \sum_{n \geq 1} U_n z^n - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n \geq 1} U_n z^{2n} + \dots. \quad \blacksquare$$

Other constructions can be shown to be admissible:

1. Diagonals and subsets with repetitions. The *diagonal*  $\mathcal{W} = \{(u, u) \mid u \in \mathcal{U}\}$  of  $\mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{U}$ , written  $\mathcal{W} = \Delta(\mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{U})$ , satisfies  $W(z) = U(z^2)$ . The class of *multisets* (or *subsets with repetitions*) of class  $\mathcal{U}$  is denoted  $\mathcal{W} = \mathbf{R}\{\mathcal{U}\}$ . It is isomorphic to  $\prod_{u \in \mathcal{U}} \{u\}^*$ , so that its OGF satisfies

$$W(z) = e^{\Psi(U)(z)}, \quad \text{where } \Psi(f) = \frac{f(z)}{1} + \frac{f(z^2)}{2} + \frac{f(z^3)}{3} + \dots. \tag{9}$$

2. Marking and composition. If  $\mathcal{U}$  is formed with “atomic” elements (nodes, letters, etc.) that determine its size, then we define the *marking* of  $\mathcal{U}$ , denoted  $\mathcal{W} = \mu\{\mathcal{U}\}$ , to consist of elements of  $\mathcal{U}$  with one individual atom marked. Since  $W_n = nU_n$ , it follows that  $W(z) = z \frac{d}{dz} U(z)$ . Similarly, the *composition* of  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$ , denoted  $\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U}[\mathcal{V}]$ , is defined as the class of all structures resulting from substitutions of atoms of  $\mathcal{U}$  by elements of  $\mathcal{V}$ , and we have  $W(z) = U(V(z))$ .

EXAMPLES. 1. Combinations. Let  $m$  be a fixed integer and  $\mathcal{J}^{(m)} = \{1, 2, \dots, m\}$ , each element of  $\mathcal{J}^{(m)}$  having size 1. The generating function of  $\mathcal{J}^{(m)}$  is  $J^{(m)}(z) = mz$ . The class  $\mathcal{C}^{(m)} = 2^{\mathcal{J}^{(m)}}$  is the set of all *combinations* of  $\mathcal{J}^{(m)}$ . By Theorem 2, the generating function of the number  $C_n^{(m)}$  of  $n$ -combinations of a set with  $m$  elements is

$$C^{(m)}(z) = e^{\Phi(J^{(m)})(z)} = \exp\left(\frac{mz}{1} - \frac{mz^2}{2} + \frac{mz^3}{3} - \dots\right) = \exp(m \log(1 + z)) = (1 + z)^m,$$

and by extracting coefficients we find as expected

$$C_n^{(m)} = \binom{m}{n} = \frac{m!}{n!(m-n)!}.$$

Similarly, for  $\mathcal{R}^{(m)} = \mathbf{R}\{\mathcal{J}^{(m)}\}$ , the class of *combinations with repetitions*, we have from (9)

$$R^{(m)}(z) = (1-z)^{-m} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad R_n^{(m)} = \binom{m+n-1}{m-1}.$$

2. Compositions and partitions. Let  $\mathcal{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ , each  $i \in \mathcal{N}$  having size  $i$ . The sequence class  $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{N}^*$  is called the set of *integer compositions*. Since  $N(z) = z/(1-z)$  and  $C(z) = (1 - N(z))^{-1}$ , we have

$$C(z) = \frac{1-z}{1-2z} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad C_n = 2^{n-1}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 1.$$

The class  $\mathcal{P} = \mathbf{R}\{\mathcal{N}\}$  is the set of *integer partitions*, and we have

$$\mathcal{P} = \prod_{\alpha \in \mathcal{N}} \{\alpha\}^* \quad \Longrightarrow \quad P(z) = \prod_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{1-z^n}. \quad (10)$$

3. Formal languages. Combinatorial processes can often be encoded naturally as strings over some finite alphabet  $\mathcal{A}$ . Regular languages are defined by regular expressions or equivalently by deterministic or nondeterministic finite automata. This is illustrated by the following two theorems, based upon the work of Chomsky and Schützenberger [1963]. Further applications appear in [Berstel and Boasson 1989]. ■

**THEOREM 3A** [Regular languages and rational functions]. *If  $\mathcal{L}$  is a regular language, then its OGF is a rational function  $L(z) = P(z)/Q(z)$ , where  $P(z)$  and  $Q(z)$  are polynomials. The counting sequence  $L_n$  satisfies a linear recurrence with constant coefficients, and we have, when  $n \geq n_0$ ,*

$$L_n = \sum_j \pi_j(n) \omega_j^n,$$

for a finite set of constants  $\omega_j$  and polynomials  $\pi_j(z)$ .

**PROOF SKETCH.** Let  $D$  be a deterministic automaton that recognizes  $\mathcal{L}$ , and let  $\mathcal{S}_j$  be the set of words accepted by  $D$  when  $D$  is started in state  $j$ . The  $\mathcal{S}_j$  satisfy a set of linear equations (involving unions and concatenation with letters) constructed from the transition table of the automaton. For generating functions, this translates into a set of linear equations with polynomial coefficients that can be solved by Cramer's rule. ■

**THEOREM 3B** [Context-free languages and algebraic functions]. *If  $\mathcal{L}$  is an unambiguous context-free language, then its OGF is an algebraic function. The counting sequence  $L_n$  satisfies a linear recurrence with polynomial coefficients: For a family  $q_j(z)$  of polynomials and  $n \geq n_0$ , we have*

$$L_n = \sum_{1 \leq j \leq m} q_j(n) L_{n-j}.$$

PROOF SKETCH. Since the language is unambiguous, its counting problem is equivalent to counting derivation trees. A production in the grammar  $S \rightarrow aTbU + bUUa + abba$  translates into  $S(z) = z^2T(z)U(z) + z^2U^2(z) + z^4$ , where  $S(z)$  is the generating function associated with nonterminal  $S$ . We obtain a set of polynomial equations that reduces to a single equation  $P(z, L(z)) = 0$  through elimination. To obtain the recurrence, we use Comtet's theorem [Comtet 1969] (see also [Flajolet 1987] for corresponding asymptotic estimates). ■

4. Trees. We shall study trees in great detail in Section 4.1. All trees here are *rooted*. In *plane trees*, subtrees under a node are ordered; in *non-plane trees*, they are unordered. If  $\mathcal{G}$  is the class of general plane trees with all node degrees allowed, then  $\mathcal{G}$  satisfies an equation  $\mathcal{G} = \{\circ\} \times \mathcal{G}^*$ , signifying that a tree is composed of a root followed by a sequence of subtrees. Thus, we have

$$G(z) = \frac{z}{1 - G(z)} \quad \implies \quad G(z) = \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 - 4z}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad G_n = \frac{1}{n} \binom{2n - 2}{n - 1}.$$

If  $\mathcal{H}$  is the class of general non-plane trees, then  $\mathcal{H} = \{\circ\} \times \mathbf{R}\{\mathcal{H}\}$ , so that  $H(z)$  satisfies the functional equation

$$H(z) = z e^{H(z) + H(z^2)/2 + H(z^3)/3 + \dots} \quad (11)$$

There are no closed form expressions for  $H_n = [z^n]H(z)$ . However, complex analysis methods make it possible to determine  $H_n$  asymptotically [Pólya 1937]. ■

### 1.3. Exponential Generating Functions

Exponential generating functions are essentially used for counting *well-labeled structures*. Such structures are composed of “atoms” (the size of a structure being the number of its atoms), and each atom is labeled by a distinct integer. For instance, a labeled graph of size  $n$  is just a graph over the set of nodes  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . A permutation (respectively, circular permutation) can be viewed as a linear (respectively, cyclic) directed graph whose nodes are labeled by distinct integers.

The basic operation over labeled structures is the *partitional product* [Foata 1974], [Goulden and Jackson 1983], [Flajolet 1981, Chapter I], [Greene 1983]. The partitional product of  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  consists of forming ordered pairs  $(u, v)$  from  $\mathcal{U} \times \mathcal{V}$  and relabeling them in all possible ways that preserve the order of the labels in  $u$  and  $v$ . More precisely, let  $w \in \mathcal{W}$  be a labeled structure of size  $q$ . A 1–1 function  $\theta$  from  $\{1, 2, \dots, q\}$  to  $\{1, 2, \dots, r\}$ , where  $r \geq q$ , defines a relabeling, denoted  $w' = \theta(w)$ , where label  $j$  in  $w$  is replaced by  $\theta(j)$ . Let  $u$  and  $w$  be two labeled structures of respective sizes  $m$  and  $n$ . The partitional product of  $u$  and  $w$  is denoted by  $u * w$ , and it consists of the set of all possible relabelings  $(u', w')$  of  $(u, w)$  so that  $(u', w') = (\theta_1(u), \theta_2(w))$ , where  $\theta_1 : \{1, 2, \dots, m\} \rightarrow \{1, 2, \dots, m + n\}$ ,  $\theta_2 : \{1, 2, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, 2, \dots, m + n\}$  satisfy the following:

1.  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  are monotone increasing functions. (This preserves the order structure of  $u$  and  $w$ .)
2. The ranges of  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  are disjoint and cover the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, m + n\}$ .

The partitional product of two classes  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  is denoted  $\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} * \mathcal{V}$  and is the union of all  $u * v$ , for  $u \in \mathcal{U}$  and  $v \in \mathcal{V}$ .

**THEOREM 4** [Sum/Product theorem for labeled structures]. *The disjoint union and partitional product over labeled structures are admissible for EGFs:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} \cup \mathcal{V}, \quad \text{with } \mathcal{U} \cap \mathcal{V} = \emptyset &\implies \widehat{W}(z) = \widehat{U}(z) + \widehat{V}(z); \\ \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U} * \mathcal{V} &\implies \widehat{W}(z) = \widehat{U}(z)\widehat{V}(z). \end{aligned}$$

**PROOF.** Obvious for unions. For products, observe that

$$W_q = \sum_{0 \leq m \leq q} \binom{q}{m} U_m V_{q-m}, \tag{12}$$

since the binomial coefficient counts the number of partitions of  $\{1, 2, \dots, q\}$  into two sets of cardinalities  $m$  and  $q - m$ . Dividing by  $q!$  we get

$$\frac{W_q}{q!} = \sum_{0 \leq m \leq q} \frac{U_m}{m!} \frac{V_{q-m}}{(q-m)!}. \blacksquare$$

The *partitional complex* of  $\mathcal{U}$  is denoted  $\mathcal{U}^{(*)}$ . It is analogous to the sequence class construction and is defined by

$$\mathcal{U}^{(*)} = \{\epsilon\} + \mathcal{U} + (\mathcal{U} * \mathcal{U}) + (\mathcal{U} * \mathcal{U} * \mathcal{U}) + \dots,$$

and its EGF is  $(1 - \widehat{U}(z))^{-1}$ . The  $k$ th partitional power of  $\mathcal{U}$  is denoted  $\mathcal{U}^{(k)}$ . The *abelian partitional power*, denoted  $\mathcal{U}^{[k]}$ , is the collection of all *sets*  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  such that  $(v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k) \in \mathcal{U}^{(k)}$ . In other words, the order of components is not taken into account. We can write symbolically  $\mathcal{U}^{[k]} = \frac{1}{k!} \mathcal{U}^{(k)}$  so that the EGF of  $\mathcal{U}^{[k]}$  is  $\frac{1}{k!} \widehat{U}^{(k)}(z)$ . The *abelian partitional complex* of  $\mathcal{U}$  is defined analogously to the powerset construction:

$$\mathcal{U}^{[*]} = \{\epsilon\} + \mathcal{U} + \mathcal{U}^{[2]} + \mathcal{U}^{[3]} + \dots$$

**THEOREM 5.** *The partitional complex and abelian partitional complex are admissible for EGFs:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U}^{(*)} &\implies \widehat{W}(z) = \frac{1}{1 - \widehat{U}(z)}; \\ \mathcal{W} = \mathcal{U}^{[*]} &\implies \widehat{W}(z) = e^{\widehat{U}(z)}. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

**EXAMPLES.** 1. Permutations and Cycles. Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be the class of all *permutations*, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the class of *circular permutations* (or *cycles*). By Theorem 5, we have  $\widehat{P}(z) = (1 - z)^{-1}$  and  $P_n = n!$ . Since any permutation decomposes into an unordered set of cycles, we have  $\mathcal{P} = \mathcal{C}^{[*]}$ , so that  $\widehat{C}(z) = \log(1/(1 - z))$  and  $C_n = (n - 1)!$ . This construction also shows that the EGF for permutations having  $k$  cycles is  $\log^k(1/(1 - z))$ , whose  $n$ th coefficient is  $s_{n,k}/n!$ , where  $s_{n,k}$  is a Stirling number of the first kind.

Let  $\mathcal{Q}$  be the class of permutations without cycles of size 1 (that is, without fixed points). Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the class of cycles of size at least 2. We have  $\mathcal{D} \cup \{(1)\} = \mathcal{C}$ , and hence  $\widehat{D}(z) + z = \widehat{C}(z)$ ,  $\widehat{D}(z) = \log(1 - z)^{-1} - z$ . Thus, we have

$$\widehat{Q}(z) = e^{\widehat{D}(z)} = \frac{e^{-z}}{1 - z}. \tag{14}$$

Similarly, the generating function for the class  $\mathcal{I}$  of *involutions* (permutations with cycles of lengths 1 and 2 only) is

$$\widehat{I}(z) = e^{z+z^2/2}. \tag{15}$$

2. Labeled graphs. Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be the class of all *labeled graphs*, and let  $\mathcal{K}$  be the class of connected labeled graphs. Then  $G_n = 2^{n(n-1)/2}$ , and  $\widehat{K}(z) = \log \widehat{G}(z)$ , from which we can prove that  $K_n/G_n \rightarrow 1$ , as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

3. Occupancies and Set Partitions. We define the *urn* of size  $n$ , for  $n \geq 1$ , to be the structure formed from the unordered collection of the integers  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ ; the urn of size 0 is defined to be the empty set. Let  $\mathcal{U}$  denote the class of all urns; we have  $\widehat{U}(z) = e^z$ . The class  $\mathcal{U}^{(k)}$  represents all possible ways of throwing distinguishable balls into  $k$  distinguishable urns, and its EGF is  $e^{kz}$ , so that as anticipated we have  $U_n^{(k)} = k^n$ . Similarly, the generating function for the number of ways of throwing  $n$  balls into  $k$  urns, no urn being empty, is  $(e^z - 1)^k$ , and thus the number of ways is  $n! [z^n] (e^z - 1)^k$ , which is equal to  $k! S_{n,k}$ , where  $S_{n,k}$  is a Stirling number of the second kind.

If  $\mathcal{S} = \mathcal{V}^{[*]}$ , where  $\mathcal{V}$  is the class of nonempty urns, then an element of  $\mathcal{S}$  of size  $n$  corresponds to a *partition* of the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  into equivalence classes. The number of such partitions is a Bell number

$$\beta_n = n! [z^n] \exp(e^z - 1). \tag{16}$$

In the same vein, the EGF of *surjections*  $\mathcal{S} = \mathcal{V}^{(*)}$  (surjective mappings from  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  onto an initial segment  $\{1, 2, \dots, m\}$  of the integers, for some  $1 \leq m \leq n$ ) is

$$\widehat{S}(z) = \frac{1}{1 - (e^z - 1)} = \frac{1}{2 - e^z}. \quad \blacksquare \tag{17}$$

For labeled structures, we can also define marking and composition constructions that translate into EGFs. Greene [1983] has defined a useful *boxing operator*:  $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{A}^{\square} * \mathcal{B}$  denotes the subset of  $\mathcal{A} * \mathcal{B}$  obtained by retaining only pairs  $(u, v) \in \mathcal{A} * \mathcal{B}$  such that label 1 is in  $u$ . This construction translates into the EGF

$$\widehat{C}(z) = \int_0^z \widehat{A}'(t) \widehat{B}(t) dt.$$

## 1.4. From Generating Functions to Counting

In the previous section we saw how generating function equations can be written directly from structural definitions of combinatorial objects. We discuss here how to go from the functional equations to exact counting results, and then indicate some extensions of the symbolic method to multivariate generating functions.

**Direct Expansions from generating functions.** When a GF is given explicitly as the product or composition of known GFs, we often get an *explicit form* for the coefficients of the GF by using classical rules for Taylor expansions and sums. Examples related to previous calculations are the Catalan numbers (2), derangement numbers (14), and Bell numbers (16):

$$[z^n] \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-4z}} = \binom{2n}{n}; \quad [z^n] \frac{e^{-z}}{1-z} = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!}; \quad [z^n] \exp(e^z - 1) = e^{-1} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{k^n}{k!}.$$

Another method for obtaining coefficients of implicitly defined GFs is the method of indeterminate coefficients. If the coefficients of  $f(z)$  are sought, we translate over coefficients the functional relation for  $f(z)$ . An important subcase is that of a first-order linear recurrence  $f_n = a_n + b_n f_{n-1}$ , whose solution can be found by iteration or summation factors:

$$f_n = a_n + b_n a_{n-1} + b_n b_{n-1} a_{n-2} + b_n b_{n-1} b_{n-2} a_{n-3} + \dots \quad (18)$$

**Solution Methods for Functional Equations.** Algebraic equations over GFs may be solved explicitly if of low degree, and the solutions can then be expanded (see the Catalan numbers (2d) in Section 1.1). For equations of higher degrees and some transcendental equations, the *Lagrange-Bürmann* inversion formula is useful:

**THEOREM 6** [Lagrange-Bürmann inversion formula]. *Let  $f(z)$  be defined implicitly by the equation  $f(z) = z \varphi(f(z))$ , where  $\varphi(u)$  is a series with  $\varphi(0) \neq 0$ . Then the coefficients of  $f(z)$ , its powers  $f(z)^k$ , and an arbitrary composition  $g(f(z))$  are related to the coefficients of the powers of  $\varphi(u)$  as follows:*

$$[z^n] f(z) = \frac{1}{n} [u^{n-1}] \varphi(u)^n; \quad (19a)$$

$$[z^n] f(z)^k = \frac{k}{n} [u^{n-k}] \varphi(u)^n; \quad (19b)$$

$$[z^n] g(f(z)) = \frac{1}{n} [u^{n-1}] \varphi(u)^n g'(u). \quad (19c)$$

**EXAMPLES.** 1. Abel identities. By (19a),  $f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{n-1} z^n / n!$  is the expansion of  $f(z) = z e^{f(z)}$ . By taking coefficients of  $e^{\alpha f(z)} e^{\beta f(z)} = e^{(\alpha+\beta)f(z)}$  we get the *Abel identity*

$$(\alpha + \beta)(n + \alpha + \beta)^{n-1} = \alpha \beta \sum_k \binom{n}{k} (k + \alpha)^{k-1} (n - k + \beta)^{n-k-1}.$$

2. Ballot numbers. Letting  $b(z) = z + z b^2(z)$  (which is related to  $B(z)$  defined in (2b) by  $b(z) = z B(z^2)$ , see also Section 4.1) and  $\varphi(u) = 1 + u^2$ , we find that  $[z^n] B^k(z) = \frac{k}{2n+k} \binom{2n+k}{n}$  (these are the *ballot numbers*). ■

Differential equations occur especially in relation to binary search trees, as we shall see in Section 4.2. For the first-order linear *differential equation*  $\frac{d}{dz}f(z) = a(z) + b(z)f(z)$ , the *variation of parameter* (or *integration factor*) method gives us the solution

$$f(z) = e^{B(z)} \int_{z_0}^z a(t)e^{-B(t)} dt, \quad \text{where } B(z) = \int_0^z b(u) du. \quad (20)$$

The lower bound  $z_0$  is chosen to satisfy the initial conditions on  $f(z)$ .

For other functional equations, *iteration* (or *bootstrapping*) may be useful. For example, under suitable (formal or analytic) convergence conditions, the solution to  $f(z) = a(z) + b(z)f(\gamma(z))$  is

$$f(z) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \left( a(\gamma^{(k)}(z)) \prod_{0 \leq j \leq k-1} b(\gamma^{(j)}(z)) \right), \quad (21)$$

where  $\gamma^{(k)}(z)$  denotes the  $k$ th iterate  $\gamma(\gamma(\dots(\gamma(z))\dots))$  of  $\gamma(z)$  (cf. Eq. (18)).

In general, the whole arsenal of algebra can be used on generating functions; the methods above represent only the most commonly used techniques. Many equations still escape exact solution, but asymptotic methods based upon complex analysis can often be used to extract asymptotic information about the GF coefficients.

**Multivariate generating functions.** If we need to count structures of size  $n$  with a certain combinatorial characteristic having value  $k$ , we can try to treat  $k$  as a parameter (see the examples above with Stirling numbers). Let  $g_{n,k}$  be the corresponding counting sequence. We may also consider bivariate generating functions, such as

$$G(u, z) = \sum_{n,k \geq 0} g_{n,k} u^k z^n \quad \text{or} \quad G(u, z) = \sum_{n,k \geq 0} g_{n,k} u^k \frac{z^n}{n!}.$$

Extensions of previous translation schemes exist (see [Goulden 1983]). For instance, for the Stirling numbers  $s_{n,k}$  and  $S_{n,k}$ , we have

$$\sum_{n,k \geq 0} s_{n,k} u^k \frac{z^n}{n!} = \exp(u \log(1-z)^{-1}) = (1-z)^{-u}; \quad (22a)$$

$$\sum_{n,k \geq 0} S_{n,k} k! u^k \frac{z^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{1 - u(e^z - 1)}. \quad (22b)$$

**Multisets.** An extension of the symbolic method to multisets is carried out in [Flajolet 1981]. Consider a class  $\mathcal{S}$  of structures and for each  $\sigma \in \mathcal{S}$  a “multiplicity”  $\mu(\sigma)$ . The pair  $(\mathcal{S}, \mu)$  is called a *multiset*, and its generating function is by definition  $S(z) = \sum_{\sigma \in \mathcal{S}} \mu(\sigma) z^{|\sigma|}$  so that  $S_n = [z^n]S(z)$  is the cumulated value of  $\mu$  over all structures of size  $n$ . This extension is useful for obtaining generating functions of expected (or cumulated) values of parameters over combinatorial structures, since translation schemes based upon admissible constructions also exist for multisets. We shall encounter such extensions when analyzing Shellsort (Section 3.3), trees (Section 4), and hashing (Section 5.1).

## 2. Asymptotic Methods

In this section, we start with elementary asymptotic methods. Next we present complex asymptotic methods, based upon singularity analysis and saddle point integrals, which allow in most cases a direct derivation of asymptotic results for coefficients of generating functions. Then we introduce Mellin transform techniques that permit asymptotic estimations of a large class of combinatorial sums, especially those involving certain arithmetic and number-theoretic functions. We conclude by a discussion of (asymptotic) limit theorems for probability distributions.

### 2.1. Generalities

We briefly recall in this subsection standard *real analysis* techniques and then discuss *complex analysis* methods.

**Real Analysis.** Asymptotic evaluation of the most elementary counting expressions may be done directly, and a useful formula in this regard is *Stirling's formula*:

$$n! \sim \sqrt{2\pi n} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n \left(1 + \frac{1}{12n} + \frac{1}{288n^2} - \frac{139}{51840n^3} - \dots\right). \quad (1)$$

For instance, the central binomial coefficient satisfies  $\binom{2n}{n} = (2n)!/n!^2 \sim 4^n/\sqrt{\pi n}$ .

The *Euler-Maclaurin* summation formula applies when an expression involves a sum at regularly spaced points (a Riemann sum) of a continuous function: such a sum is approximated by the corresponding integral, and the formula provides a full expansion. The basic form is the following:

**THEOREM 1** [Euler-Maclaurin summation formula]. *If  $g(x)$  is  $C^\infty$  over  $[0, 1]$ , then for any integer  $m$ , we have*

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{g(0) + g(1)}{2} - \int_0^1 g(x) dx = \\ \sum_{1 \leq j \leq m-1} \frac{B_{2j}}{(2j)!} (g^{(2j-1)}(1) - g^{(2j-1)}(0)) - \int_0^1 g^{(2m)}(x) \frac{B_{2m}(x)}{(2m)!} dx, \end{aligned} \quad (2a)$$

where  $B_j(x) \equiv j! [z^j] ze^{xz}/(e^z - 1)$  is a Bernoulli polynomial, and  $B_j = B_j(1)$  is a Bernoulli number.

We can derive several formulæ by summing (2a). If  $\{x\}$  denotes the fractional part of  $x$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq n} g(j) - \int_0^n g(x) dx = \frac{1}{2}g(0) + \frac{1}{2}g(n) + \sum_{1 \leq j \leq m-1} \frac{B_{2j}}{(2j)!} (g^{(2j-1)}(n) - g^{(2j-1)}(0)) \\ - \int_0^n g^{(2m)}(x) \frac{B_{2m}(\{x\})}{(2m)!} dx, \end{aligned} \quad (2b)$$

which expresses the difference between a discrete sum and its corresponding integral. By a change of scale, for  $h$  small, setting  $g(x) = f(hx)$ , we obtain the asymptotic expansion of a Riemann sum, when the step size  $h$  tends to 0:

$$\sum_{0 \leq jh \leq 1} f(jh) \sim \frac{1}{h} \int_0^1 f(x) dx + \frac{f(0) + f(1)}{2} + \sum_{j \geq 1} \frac{B_{2j} h^{2j-1}}{(2j)!} (f^{(2j-1)}(1) - f^{(2j-1)}(0)). \quad (2c)$$

EXAMPLES. 1. The *harmonic numbers* are defined by  $H_n = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots + \frac{1}{n}$ , and they satisfy  $H_n = \log n + \gamma + \frac{1}{2n} + \dots$ .

2. The binomial coefficient  $\binom{2n}{n-k}$ , for  $k < n^{2/3}$ , is asymptotically equal to the central coefficient  $\binom{2n}{n}$  times  $\exp(-k^2/n)$ , which follows from estimating its logarithm. This *Gaussian approximation* is a special case of the central limit theorem of probability theory.

■

*Laplace's method for sums* is a classical approach for evaluating sums  $S_n = \sum_k f(k, n)$  that have a dominant term. First we determine the rank  $k_0$  of the dominant term. We can often show for “smooth” functions  $f(k, n)$  that  $f(k, n) \approx f(k_0, n) \phi((k - k_0)h)$ , with  $h = h(n)$  small (like  $1/\sqrt{n}$  or  $1/n$ ). We conclude by applying the Euler-Maclaurin summation to  $\phi(x)$ . An example is the asymptotics of the Bell numbers defined in (1.16) [De Bruijn 1981, page 108] or the number of involutions (1.15) [Knuth 1973, page 65]. There are extensions to multiple sums involving multivariate Euler-Maclaurin summations.

**Complex Analysis.** A powerful method (and one that is often computationally simple) is to use *complex analysis* to go directly from a generating function to the asymptotic form of its coefficients. For instance, the EGF for the number of 2-regular graphs [Comtet 1974, page 273] is

$$f(z) = \frac{e^{-z/2 - z^2/4}}{\sqrt{1-z}}, \quad (3)$$

and  $[z^n]f(z)$  is sought. A bivariate Laplace method is feasible. However, it is simpler to notice that  $f(z)$  is analytic for complex  $z$ , except when  $z = 1$ . There a “singular expansion” holds:

$$f(z) \sim \frac{e^{-3/4}}{\sqrt{1-z}}, \quad \text{as } z \rightarrow 1. \quad (4a)$$

General theorems that we are going to discuss in the next section let us “transfer” an approximation (4a) of the function to an approximation of the coefficients:

$$[z^n]f(z) \sim [z^n] \frac{e^{-3/4}}{\sqrt{1-z}}. \quad (4b)$$

Thus,  $[z^n]f(z) \sim e^{-3/4} (-1)^n \binom{-1/2}{n} \sim e^{-3/4} / \sqrt{\pi n}$ .

## 2.2. Singularity Analysis

A *singularity* is a point at which a function ceases to be analytic. A dominant singularity is one of smallest modulus. It is known that a function with positive coefficients that is not entire always has a dominant positive real singularity. In most cases, the asymptotic behavior of the coefficients of the function is determined by that singularity.

**Location of singularities.** The classical exponential-order formula relates the location of singularities of a function to the exponential growth of its coefficients.

**THEOREM 2** [Exponential growth formula]. *If  $f(z)$  is analytic at the origin and has nonnegative coefficients, and if  $\rho$  is its smallest positive real singularity, then its coefficients  $f_n = [z^n]f(z)$  satisfy*

$$(1 - \epsilon)^n \rho^{-n} <_{\text{i.o.}} f_n <_{\text{a.e.}} (1 + \epsilon)^n \rho^{-n}, \quad (5)$$

for any  $\epsilon > 0$ . Here “i.o.” means *infinitely often (for infinitely many values)* and “a.e.” means *“almost everywhere” (except for finitely many values)*.

**EXAMPLES.** 1. Let  $f(z) = 1/\cos(z)$  (EGF for “alternating permutations”) and  $g(z) = 1/(2 - e^z)$  (EGF for “surjections”). Then bounds (5) apply with  $\rho = \pi/2$  and  $\rho = \log 2$ , respectively.

2. The solution  $f(z)$  of the functional equation  $f(z) = z + f(z^2 + z^3)$  is the OGF of 2-3 trees [Odlyzko 81]. Setting  $\sigma(z) = z^2 + z^3$ , the functional equation has the following formal solution, obtained by iteration (see Eq. (1.21)):

$$f(z) = \sum_{m \geq 0} \sigma^{(m)}(z), \quad (6a)$$

where  $\sigma^{(m)}(z)$  is the  $m$ th iterate of  $\sigma(z)$ . The sum in (6a) converges geometrically when  $|z|$  is less than the smallest positive root  $\rho$  of the equation  $\rho = \sigma(\rho)$ , and it becomes infinite at  $z = \rho$ . The smallest possible root is  $\rho = 1/\phi$ , where  $\phi$  is the golden ratio  $(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$ . Hence, we have

$$\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n (1 - \epsilon)^n <_{\text{i.o.}} [z^n] f(z) <_{\text{a.e.}} \left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n (1 + \epsilon)^n. \quad (6b)$$

The bound (6b) and even an asymptotic expansion [Odlyzko 81] are obtainable without an explicit expression for the coefficients. See Theorem 4.7. ■

**Nature of singularities.** Another way of expressing Theorem 2 is as follows: we have  $f_n \sim \theta(n)\rho^{-n}$ , where the *subexponential factor*  $\theta(n)$  is i.o. larger than any decreasing exponential and a.e. smaller than any increasing exponential. Common forms for  $\theta(n)$  are  $n^\alpha \log^\beta n$ , for some constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . The subexponential factors are usually related to the growth of the function around its singularity. (The singularity may be taken equal to 1 by normalization.)

METHOD [Singularity analysis]. Assume that  $f(z)$  has around its dominant singularity 1 an asymptotic expansion of the form

$$f(z) = \sigma(z) + R(z), \quad \text{with } R(z) \ll \sigma(z), \quad \text{as } z \rightarrow 1, \quad (7a)$$

where  $\sigma(z)$  is in a standard set of functions that include  $(1-z)^a \log^b(1-z)$ , for constants  $a$  and  $b$ . Then under general conditions Eq. (7a) leads to

$$[z^n]f(z) = [z^n]\sigma(z) + [z^n]R(z), \quad \text{with } [z^n]R(z) \ll [z^n]\sigma(z), \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty. \quad (7b)$$

Applications of this principle are based upon a variety of conditions on function  $f(z)$  or  $R(z)$ , giving rise to several methods:

1. *Transfer methods* require only growth information on the remainder term  $R(z)$ , but the approximation has to be established for  $z \rightarrow 1$  in some region of the complex plane. Transfer methods largely originate in [Odlyzko 1982] and are developed systematically in [Flajolet and Odlyzko 1989].
2. *Tauberian theorems* assume only that Eq. (7a) holds when  $z$  is real and less than 1 (that is, as  $z \rightarrow 1^-$ ), but they require *a priori* Tauberian side conditions (positivity, monotonicity) to be satisfied by the coefficients  $f_n$  and are restricted to less general types of growth for  $R(z)$ . (See [Feller 1971, page 447] and [Greene and Knuth 1982, page 52] for a combinatorial application.)
3. *Darboux's method* assumes smoothness conditions (differentiability) on the remainder term  $R(z)$  [Henrici 1977, page 447].

Our transfer method approach is the one that is easiest to apply and the most flexible for combinatorial enumerations. First, we need the asymptotic growth of coefficients of standard singular functions. For  $\sigma(z) = (1-z)^{-s}$ , where  $s > 0$ , by Newton's expansion the  $n$ th coefficient in its Taylor expansion is  $\binom{n+s-1}{n}$ , which is  $\sim n^{s-1}/(s)$ . For many standard singular functions, like  $(1-z)^{-1/2} \log^2(1-z)^{-1}$ , we may use either Euler-Maclaurin summation on the explicit form of the coefficients or contour integration to find  $\sigma_n \sim (\pi n)^{-1/2} \log^2 n$ . Next we need to "transfer" coefficients of remainder terms.

THEOREM 3 [Transfer lemma]. If  $R(z)$  is analytic for  $|z| < 1 + \delta$  for some  $\delta > 0$  (with the possible exception of a sector around  $z = 1$ , where  $|\text{Arg}(z - 1)| < \epsilon$  for some  $\epsilon < \frac{\pi}{2}$ ) and if  $R(z) = O((1-z)^r)$  as  $z \rightarrow 1$  for some real  $r$ , then

$$[z^n]R(z) = O(n^{-r-1}). \quad (8b)$$

The proof proceeds by choosing a contour of integration made of part of the circle  $|z| = 1 + \delta$  and the boundary of the sector, except for a small notch of diameter  $1/n$  around  $z = 1$ . Furthermore, when  $r \leq -1$ , we need only assume that the function is analytic for  $|z| \leq 1$ ,  $z \neq 1$ .

EXAMPLES. 1. The EGF  $f(z)$  of 2-regular graphs is given in Eq. (3). We can expand the exponential around  $z = 1$  and get

$$f(z) = \frac{e^{-z/2-z^2/4}}{\sqrt{1-z}} = e^{-3/4}(1-z)^{-1/2} + O((1-z)^{1/2}), \quad \text{as } z \rightarrow 1. \quad (9a)$$

The function  $f(z)$  is analytic in the complex plane slit along  $z \geq 1$ , and Eq. (9a) holds there in the vicinity of  $z = 1$ . Thus, by the transfer lemma with  $r = \frac{1}{2}$ , we have

$$[z^n]f(z) = e^{-3/4} \binom{n - \frac{1}{2}}{n} + O(n^{-3/2}) = \frac{e^{-3/4}}{\sqrt{\pi}} n^{-1/2} + O(n^{-3/2}). \quad (9b)$$

2. The EGF of surjections was shown in (1.17) to be  $f(z) = (2 - e^z)^{-1}$ . It is analytic for  $|z| \leq 3$ , except for a simple pole at  $z = \log 2$ , where local expansions show that

$$f(z) = \frac{1}{2 \log 2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - z/\log 2} + O(1), \quad \text{as } z \rightarrow \log 2, \quad (10a)$$

so that

$$[z^n]f(z) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\log 2} \right)^{n+1} \left( 1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) \right). \quad (10b)$$

3. A functional equation. The OGF of certain trees [Polya 1937]  $f(z) = 1 + z + z^2 + 2z^3 + \dots$  is known only via the functional equation

$$f(z) = \frac{1}{1 - zf(z^2)}.$$

It can be checked that  $f(z)$  is analytic at the origin. Its dominant singularity is a simple pole  $\rho < 1$  determined by cancellation of the denominator,  $\rho f(\rho^2) = 1$ . Around  $z = \rho = 0.59475\dots$ , we have

$$f(z) = \frac{1}{\rho f(\rho^2) - zf(z^2)} = \frac{1}{c(\rho - z)} + O(1), \quad \text{with } c = \left. \frac{d}{dz} zf(z^2) \right|_{z=\rho}. \quad (11a)$$

Thus, with  $K = (c\rho)^{-1} = 0.36071$ , we find that

$$[z^n]f(z) = K\rho^{-n} \left( 1 + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) \right). \quad (11b)$$

More precise expansions exist for coefficients of meromorphic functions (functions with poles only), like the ones in the last two examples (for example, see [Knuth 1973, 5.3.1–3,4], [Henrici 1977], and [Flajolet and Odlyzko 1989]). For instance, the error of approximation (11b) is less than  $10^{-15}$  when  $n = 100$ . Finally, the OGF of 2–3 trees (6a) is amenable to transfer methods, though extraction of singular expansions is appreciably more difficult [Odlyzko 1982]. ■

We conclude this subsection by citing the lemma at the heart of Darboux’s method [Henrici 1977, page 447] and a classical Tauberian Theorem [Feller 1971, page 447].

**THEOREM 4** [Darboux’s method]. *If  $R(z)$  is analytic for  $|z| < 1$ , continuous for  $|z| \leq 1$ , and  $d$  times continuously differentiable over  $|z| = 1$ , then*

$$[z^n]R(z) = o\left(\frac{1}{n^d}\right). \quad (12)$$

For instance, if  $R(z) = (1 - z)^{5/2}H(z)$ , where  $H(z)$  is analytic for  $|z| < 1 + \delta$ , then we can use  $d = 2$  for Theorem 4 and obtain  $[z^n]R(z) = o(1/n^2)$ . The theorem is usually applied to derive expansions of coefficients of functions of the form  $f(z) = (1 - z)^r H(z)$ , with  $H(z)$  analytic in a larger domain than  $f(z)$ . Such functions can however be treated directly by transfer methods (Theorem 3).

THEOREM 5 [Tauberian theorem of Hardy–Littlewood–Karamata]. *Assume that the function  $f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} f_n z^n$  has radius of convergence 1 and satisfies for real  $z$ ,  $0 \leq z < 1$ ,*

$$f(z) \sim \frac{1}{(1-z)^s} L\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right), \quad \text{as } z \rightarrow 1^-, \quad (13a)$$

where  $s > 0$  and  $L(u)$  is a function varying slowly at infinity, like  $\log^b(u)$ . If  $\{f_n\}_{n \geq 0}$  is monotonic, then

$$f_n \sim \frac{n^{s-1}}{(s)} L(n). \quad (13b)$$

An application to the function  $f(z) = \prod_k (1 + \frac{z^k}{k})$  is given in [Greene and Knuth 1982, page 52]; the function represents the EGF of permutations with distinct cycle lengths. That function has a natural boundary at  $|z| = 1$  and hence is not amenable to Darboux or transfer methods.

Singularity analysis is used extensively in Sections 3–5 for asymptotics related to sorting methods, plane trees, search trees, partial match queries, and hashing with linear probing.

### 2.3. Saddle Point Methods

Saddle point methods are used for extracting coefficients of entire functions (which are analytic in the entire complex plane) and functions that “grow fast” around their dominant singularities, like  $\exp(1/(1-z))$ . They also play an important rôle in obtaining limit distribution results and exponential tails for discrete probability distributions.

**A Simple Bound.** Assume that  $f(z) = \sum_n f_n z^n$  is entire and has positive coefficients. Then by Cauchy’s formula, we have

$$f_n = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{f(z)}{z^{n+1}} dz. \quad (14)$$

We refer to (14) as a Cauchy coefficient integral. If we take as contour  $\Gamma$ , the circle  $|z| = R$ , we get an easy upper bound

$$f_n \leq \frac{f(R)}{R^n}, \quad (15)$$

since the maximum value of  $|f(z)|$ , for  $|z| = R$ , is  $f(R)$ . The bound (15) is valid for any  $R > 0$ . In particular, we have  $f_n \leq \min_{R>0} \{f(R) R^{-n}\}$ . We can find the minimum value by setting  $\frac{d}{dR} (f(R) R^{-n}) = (f'(R) - f(R) \frac{n}{R}) R^{-n} = 0$ , which gives us the following bound:

THEOREM 6 [Saddle point bound]. *If  $f(z)$  is entire and has positive coefficients, then for all  $n$ , we have*

$$[z^n]f(z) \leq \frac{f(R)}{R^n}, \quad (16)$$

where  $R = R(n)$  is the smallest positive real number such that

$$R \frac{f'(R)}{f(R)} = n. \quad (17)$$

**Complete Saddle Point Analysis.** The saddle point method is a refinement of the technique we used to derive (15). It applies in general to integrals depending upon a large parameter, of the form

$$I = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} e^{h(z)} dz. \quad (18a)$$

A point  $z = \sigma$  such that  $h'(z) = 0$  is called a *saddle point* owing to the topography of  $|e^{h(z)}|$  around  $z = \sigma$ : There are two perpendicular directions at  $z = \sigma$ , one along which the integrand  $|e^{h(z)}|$  has a local minimum at  $z = \sigma$ , and the other (called the *axis* of the saddle point) along which the integrand has a local maximum at  $z = \sigma$ . The principle steps of the saddle point method are as follows:

1. Show that the contribution of the integral is asymptotically localized to a fraction  $\epsilon$  of the contour around  $z = \sigma$  traversed along its axis. (This forces  $\epsilon$  to be not too small.)
2. Show that over this subcontour,  $h(z)$  is suitably approximated by  $h(\sigma) + \frac{(z-\sigma)^2}{2} h''(\sigma)$ . (This imposes a conflicting constraint that  $\epsilon$  should not be too large.)

If points 1 and 2 can be established, then  $I$  can be approximated by

$$I \approx \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_\epsilon} \exp \left( h(\sigma) + \frac{(z-\sigma)^2}{2} h''(\sigma) \right) dz \approx \frac{e^{h(\sigma)}}{\sqrt{2\pi h''(\sigma)}}. \quad (18b)$$

Classes of functions such that the saddle point estimate (18b) applies to Cauchy coefficient integrals (14) are called *admissible* and have been described by several authors [Hayman 1956], [Harris and Schoenfeld 1968], [Odlyzko and Richmond 1985]. Cauchy coefficient integrals (14) can be put into the form (18a), where  $h(z) = h_n(z) = \log f(z) - (n+1) \log z$ , and a saddle point  $z = R$  is a root of the equation  $h'(z) = \frac{d}{dz} (\log f(z) - (n+1) \log z) = f'(z)/f(z) - (n+1)/z = 0$ . By the method of (18) we get the following estimate:

**THEOREM 7** [Saddle point method for Cauchy coefficient integrals]. *If  $f(z)$  has positive coefficients and is in a class of admissible functions, then*

$$f_n \sim \frac{f(R)}{\sqrt{2\pi C(n)} R^{n+1}}, \quad \text{with } C(n) = \left. \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \log f(z) \right|_{z=R} + (n+1)R^{-2}, \quad (19)$$

where the saddle point  $R$  is the smallest positive real number such that

$$R \frac{f'(R)}{f(R)} = n + 1. \quad (20)$$

**EXAMPLES.** 1. We get Stirling's formula (1) by letting  $f(z) = e^z$ . The saddle point is  $R = (n+1)$ , and by Theorem 7 we have

$$\frac{1}{n!} = [z^n] e^z \sim \frac{e^{n+1}}{\sqrt{2\pi/(n+1)} (n+1)^{n+1}} \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi n}} \left( \frac{e}{n} \right)^n.$$

2. By (1.15), the number of involutions is given by

$$I_n = n! [z^n] e^{z+z^2/2} = \frac{n!}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{z+z^2/2}}{z^{n+1}} dz,$$

and the saddle point is  $R = \sqrt{n} + 1/2 + 5/(8\sqrt{n}) + \dots$ . We choose  $\epsilon = n^{-2/5}$ , so that for  $z = Re^{i\epsilon}$ , we have  $(z - R)^2 h''(R) \rightarrow \infty$  while  $(z - R)^3 h'''(R) \rightarrow 0$ . Thus,

$$\frac{I_n}{n!} \sim \frac{e^{3/4}}{2\sqrt{\pi}} n^{-n/2} e^{n/8}.$$

The asymptotics of the Bell numbers can be done in the same way [De Bruijn 1981, page 104].

3. A function with a finite singularity. For  $f(z) = e^{z/(1-z)}$ , Theorem 7 gives us

$$f_n \equiv [z^n] \exp\left(\frac{z}{1-z}\right) \sim \frac{C e^{d\sqrt{n}}}{n^\alpha}. \tag{21}$$

A similar method can be applied to the integer partition function  $p(z) = \prod_{n \geq 1} (1 - z^n)^{-1}$  though it has a natural boundary, and estimates (21) are characteristic of functions whose logarithm has a pole-like singularity. ■

Specializing some of Hayman’s results, we can define inductively a class  $\mathcal{H}$  of admissible functions as follows: (i) If  $p(z)$  denotes an arbitrary polynomial with positive coefficients, then  $e^{p(z)} \in \mathcal{H}$ . (ii) If  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are arbitrary functions of  $\mathcal{H}$ , then  $e^{f(z)}$ ,  $f(z) \cdot g(z)$ ,  $f(z) + p(z)$ , and  $p(f(z))$  are also in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

Several applications of saddle point methods appear in Section 5.1 in the analysis of maximum bucket occupancy, extendible hashing, and coalesced hashing.

## 2.4. Mellin Transforms

The Mellin transform, a tool originally developed for analytic number theory, is useful for analyzing sums where arithmetic functions appear or nontrivial periodicity phenomena occur. Such sums often present themselves as expectations of combinatorial parameters or generating functions.

**Basic Properties.** Let  $f(x)$  be a function defined for real  $x \geq 0$ . Then its *Mellin transform* is a function  $f^*(s)$  of the complex variable  $s$  defined by

$$f^*(s) = \int_0^\infty f(x) x^{s-1} dx. \tag{22}$$

If  $f(x)$  is continuous and is  $O(x^\alpha)$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$  and  $O(x^\beta)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ , then its Mellin transform is defined in the “fundamental strip”  $-\alpha < \Re(s) < -\beta$ , which we denote by  $\langle -\alpha; -\beta \rangle$ . For instance the Mellin transform of  $e^{-x}$  is the well-known *Gamma function*,  $\Gamma(s)$ , with

fundamental strip  $\langle 0; +\infty \rangle$ , and the transform of  $\sum_{n \geq k} (-x)^n/n!$ , for  $k > 0$ , is  $f(s)$  with fundamental strip  $\langle -k; -k + 1 \rangle$ . There is also an inversion theorem à la Fourier:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} f^*(s)x^{-s} ds, \quad (23)$$

where  $c$  is taken arbitrarily in the fundamental strip.

The important principle for asymptotic analysis is that *under the Mellin transform, there is a correspondence between terms of asymptotic expansions of  $f(x)$  at 0 (respectively,  $+\infty$ ) and singularities of  $f^*(s)$  in a left (respectively, right) half-plane.* To see why this is so, assume that  $f^*(s)$  is small at  $\pm i\infty$  and has only polar singularities. Then, we can close the contour of integration in (23) to the left (for  $x \rightarrow 0$ ) or to the right for ( $x \rightarrow \infty$ ) and derive by Cauchy's residue formula

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= + \sum_{\sigma} \operatorname{Res} (f^*(s)x^{-s}; s = \sigma) + O(x^{-d}), & \text{as } x \rightarrow 0. \\ f(x) &= - \sum_{\sigma} \operatorname{Res} (f^*(s)x^{-s}; s = \sigma) + O(x^{-d}), & \text{as } x \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned} \quad (24)$$

The sum in the first equation is extended to all poles  $\sigma$  where  $d \leq \Re(\sigma) \leq -\alpha$ ; the sum in the second equation is extended to all poles  $\sigma$  with  $-\beta \leq \Re(\sigma) \leq d$ . Those relations have the character of asymptotic expansions of  $f(x)$  at 0 and  $+\infty$ : We observe that if  $f^*(s)$  has a  $k$ th-order pole at  $\sigma$ , then a residue in (24) is of the form  $Q_{k-1}(\log x)x^{-\sigma}$ , where  $Q_{k-1}(u)$  is a polynomial of degree  $k - 1$ .

There is finally an important functional property of the Mellin transform: If  $g(x) = f(\mu x)$ , then  $g^*(s) = \mu^{-s} f^*(s)$ . Hence, transforms of sums called “harmonic sums” decompose into the product of a generalized Dirichlet series  $\sum \lambda_k \mu_k^s$  and the transform  $f^*(s)$  of the basis function:

$$F(x) = \sum_k \lambda_k f(\mu_k x) \quad \Longrightarrow \quad F^*(s) = \left( \sum_k \lambda_k \mu_k^{-s} \right) f^*(s). \quad (25)$$

**Asymptotics of Sums.** The standard usage of Mellin transforms devolves from a combination of Eqs. (24) and (25):

**THEOREM 8** [Mellin asymptotic summation formula]. *Assume that in (25) the transform  $f^*(s)$  of  $f(x)$  is exponentially small towards  $\pm i\infty$  with only polar singularities and that the Dirichlet series is meromorphic of finite order. Then the asymptotic behavior of a harmonic sum  $F(x) = \sum_k \lambda_k f(\mu_k x)$ , as  $x \rightarrow 0$  (respectively,  $x \rightarrow \infty$ ), is given by*

$$\sum_k \lambda_k f(\mu_k x) \sim \pm \sum_{\sigma} \operatorname{Res} \left( \left( \sum_k \lambda_k \mu_k^{-s} \right) f^*(s)x^{-s}; s = \sigma \right). \quad (26)$$

*For an asymptotic expansion of the sum as  $x \rightarrow 0$  (respectively, as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ ), the sign in (26) is “+” (respectively, “−”), and the sum is taken over poles to the left (respectively, to the right) of the fundamental strip.*

EXAMPLES. 1. An arithmetical sum. Let  $F(x)$  be the harmonic sum  $\sum_{k \geq 1} d(k)e^{-k^2 x^2}$ , where  $d(k)$  is the number of divisors of  $k$ . Making use of (25) and the fact that the transform of  $e^{-x}$  is  $\zeta(s)$ , we have

$$F^*(s) = \frac{1}{2}, \left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \sum_{k \geq 1} d(k)k^{-s} = \frac{1}{2}, \left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \zeta^2(s), \quad (27a)$$

where  $\zeta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{-s}$ . Here  $F^*(s)$  is defined in the fundamental strip  $\langle 1; +\infty \rangle$ . To the left of this strip, it has a simple pole at  $s = 0$  and a double pole at  $s = 1$ . By expanding  $\zeta(s)$  and  $\zeta^2(s)$  around  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ , we get for any  $d > 0$

$$F(x) = -\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} \frac{\log x}{x} + \left(\frac{3\gamma}{4} - \frac{\log 2}{2}\right) \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{x} + \frac{1}{4} + O(x^d), \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow 0. \quad (27b)$$

2. A sum with hidden periodicities. Let  $F(x)$  be the harmonic sum  $\sum_{k \geq 0} (1 - e^{-x/2^k})$ . The transform  $F^*(s)$  is defined in the fundamental strip  $\langle -1; 0 \rangle$ , and by (25) we find

$$F^*(s) = -\zeta(s) \sum_{k \geq 0} 2^{ks} = -\zeta(s) \frac{1}{1 - 2^s}. \quad (28a)$$

The expansion of  $F(x)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  is determined by the poles of  $F^*(s)$  to the right of the fundamental strip. There is a double pole at  $s = 0$  and the denominator of (28a) gives simple poles at  $s = \chi_k = 2k\pi i / \log 2$ , for  $k \neq 0$ . Each simple pole  $\chi_k$  contributes a fluctuating term  $x^{-\chi_k} = \exp(2k\pi i \log_2 x)$  to the asymptotic expansion of  $F(x)$ . Collecting fluctuations, we have

$$F(x) = \log_2 x + P(\log_2 x) + O(x^{-d}), \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow \infty, \quad (28b)$$

where  $P(u)$  is a periodic function with period 1 and a convergent Fourier expansion. ■

Mellin transforms are the primary tool to study tries and radix exchange sort (Section 4.3). They are also useful in the study of certain plane tree algorithms (Section 4.1), bubble sort (Section 3.4), and interpolation search and extendible hashing (Section 5.1).

## 2.5. Limit Probability Distributions

General references for this section are [Feller 1971] and [Billingsley 1986]. We recall that if  $X$  is a real-valued *random variable* (RV), then its *distribution function* is  $F(x) = \Pr\{X \leq x\}$ , and its *mean* and *variance* are  $\mu_X = \bar{X} = \mathbf{E}\{X\}$  and  $\sigma_X^2 = \text{var}(X) = \mathbf{E}\{X^2\} - (\mathbf{E}\{X\})^2$ , respectively. The  $k$ th moment of  $X$  is  $M_k = \mathbf{E}\{X^k\}$ . We have  $\mu_{X+Y} = \mu_X + \mu_Y$ , and when  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent, we have  $\sigma_{X+Y}^2 = \sigma_X^2 + \sigma_Y^2$ . For a nonnegative integer-valued RV, its *probability generating function* (PGF) is defined by  $p(z) = \sum_{k \geq 0} p_k z^k$ , where  $p_k = \Pr\{X = k\}$ ; the mean and variance are respectively  $\mu = p'(1)$  and  $\sigma^2 = p''(1) + p'(1) - (p'(1))^2$ . It is well known that the PGF of a sum of independent RVs is the product of their PGFs, and conversely, a product of PGFs corresponds to a sum of independent RVs.

A problem that naturally presents itself in the analysis of algorithms is as follows: Given a class  $\mathcal{C}$  of combinatorial structures (such as trees, permutations, etc.), with  $X_n^*$  a “parameter” over structures of size  $n$  (path length, number of inversions, etc.), determine the *limit* (asymptotic) distribution of the normalized variable  $X_n = (X_n^* - \mu_{X_n^*})/\sigma_{X_n^*}$ . Simulations suggest that such a limit does exist in typical cases. The limit distribution usually provides more information than does a plain average-case analysis. The following two transforms are important tools in the study of limit distributions:

1. *Characteristic functions* (or *Fourier transforms*), defined for RV  $X$  by

$$\phi(t) = \mathbf{E}\{e^{itX}\} = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{itx} dF(x). \quad (29)$$

For a nonnegative integer-valued RV  $X$ , we have  $\phi(t) = p(e^{it})$ .

2. *Laplace transforms*, defined for a nonnegative RV  $X$  by

$$g(t) = \mathbf{E}\{e^{-tX}\} = \int_0^{+\infty} e^{-tx} dF(x). \quad (30)$$

The transform  $g(-t)$  is sometimes called the “moment generating function” of  $X$  since it is essentially the EGF of  $X$ ’s moments. For a nonnegative integer-valued RV  $X$ , we have  $g(t) = p(e^{-t})$ .

**Limit Theorems.** Under appropriate conditions the distribution functions  $F_n(x)$  of a sequence of RVs  $X_n$  converge pointwise to a limit  $F(x)$  at each point of continuity of  $F(x)$ . Such convergence is known as “weak convergence” or “convergence in distribution,” and we denote it by  $F = \lim F_n$  [Billingsley 1986].

**THEOREM 9** [Continuity theorem for characteristic functions]. *Let  $X_n$  be a sequence of RVs with characteristic functions  $\phi_n(t)$  and distribution functions  $F_n(x)$ . If there is a function  $\phi(t)$  continuous at the origin such that  $\lim \phi_n(t) = \phi(t)$ , then there is a distribution function  $F(x)$  such that  $F = \lim F_n$ . Function  $F(x)$  is the distribution function of the RV with characteristic function  $\phi(t)$ .*

**THEOREM 10** [Continuity theorem for Laplace transforms]. *Let  $X_n$  be a sequence of RVs with Laplace transforms  $g_n(t)$  and distribution functions  $F_n(x)$ . If there is some  $a$  such that*

for all  $|t| \leq a$  there is a limit  $g(t) = \lim g_n(t)$ , then there is a distribution function  $F(x)$  such that  $F = \lim F_n$ . Function  $F(x)$  is the distribution function of the RV with Laplace transform  $g(t)$ .

Similar limit conditions exist when the moments of the  $X_n$  converge to the moments of a RV  $X$ , provided that the “moment problem” for  $X$  has a unique solution. A sufficient condition for this is  $\sum_{j \geq 0} \mathbf{E}\{X^{2j}\}^{-1/(2j)} = +\infty$ .

**Generating functions.** If the  $X_n$  are nonnegative integer-valued RVs, then they define a sequence  $p_{n,k} = \Pr\{X_n = k\}$ , and the problem is to determine the asymptotic behavior of the distributions  $\pi_n = \{p_{n,k}\}_{k \geq 0}$  (or the associated cumulative distribution functions  $F_n$ ), as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . In simple cases, such as binomial distributions, explicit expressions are available and can be treated using the real analysis techniques of Section 2.1.

In several cases, either the “horizontal” GFs  $p_n(u)$  or “vertical” GFs  $q_k(z)$

$$p_n(u) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{n,k} u^k, \quad q_k(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{n,k} z^n, \quad (31)$$

have explicit expressions, and complex analysis methods can be used to extract their coefficients asymptotically.

Sometimes, only the bivariate generating function

$$P(u, z) = \sum_{n,k \geq 0} p_{n,k} u^k z^n \quad (32)$$

has an explicit form, and a two-stage method must be employed.

**Univariate Problems.** The most well known application of univariate techniques is the *central limit theorem*. If  $X_n = A_1 + \dots + A_n$  is the sum of independent identically distributed RVs with mean 0 and variance 1, then  $X_n/\sqrt{n}$  tends to a normal distribution with unit variance. The classical proof [Feller 1971, page 515] uses characteristic functions: the characteristic function of  $X_n/\sqrt{n}$  is  $\phi_n(t) = \phi^n(t/\sqrt{n})$ , where  $\phi(t)$  is the characteristic function of each  $A_j$ , and it converges to  $e^{-t^2/2}$ , the characteristic function of the normal distribution.

Another proof that provides information on the rate of convergence and on densities when the  $A_j$  are nonnegative integer-valued uses the saddle point method applied to

$$\Pr\{X_n = k\} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint \frac{p(z)^n}{z^{k+1}} dz, \quad (33)$$

where  $p(z)$  is the PGF of each  $A_j$  [Greene and Knuth 1982].

A general principle is that univariate problems can be often solved using either continuity theorems or complex asymptotics (singularity analysis or saddle point) applied to vertical or horizontal generating functions.

**EXAMPLES.** 1. A horizontal generating function. The probability that a random permutation of  $n$  elements has  $k$  cycles is  $[u^k] p_n(u)$ , where

$$p_n(u) = \frac{1}{n!} u(u+1)(u+2) \dots (u+n-1).$$

Like for the basic central limit theorem above, either characteristic functions or saddle point methods can be used to establish normality of the limiting distribution as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  (Goncharov's theorem). The same normality result holds for the distribution of inversions in permutations, for which

$$p_n(u) = \frac{1}{n!} \prod_{1 \leq j \leq n} \frac{1 - u^j}{1 - u}.$$

Inversions will be studied in Section 3.1 in connection with sorting.

2. A vertical generating function. The probability that a random binary string with length  $n$  has no "1-run" of length  $k$  is  $[z^n]q_k(z)$ , where

$$q_k(2z) = \frac{1 - z^k}{1 - 2z + z^{k+1}}.$$

A singularity analysis [Knuth 1978] can be used: the dominant singularity of  $q_k(z)$  is at  $z = \zeta_k \approx 1 + 2^{-k-1}$ , and we have  $[z^n]q_k(z) \approx e^{-n/2^{k+1}}$ . ■

**Bivariate Problems.** For bivariate problems with explicit bivariate GFs (32), the following two-stage approach may be useful. First, we can often get a good approximation to the Cauchy coefficient integral

$$p_n(u) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint \frac{P(z, u)}{z^{n+1}} dz$$

by treating  $u$  as a parameter and applying singularity analysis or the saddle point method.

Second, if  $u$  is real and close to 1 (for example,  $u = e^{-t}$ , with  $t$  close to 0), we may be able to conclude the analysis using the continuity theorem for Laplace transforms. If  $u$  is complex,  $|u| = 1$  (that is,  $u = e^{it}$ ), we try to use instead the continuity theorem for characteristic functions. For instance, Bender [1973] and Canfield [1977] have obtained general normality results for distributions corresponding to bivariate generating functions of the form

$$\frac{1}{1 - ug(z)} \quad \text{and} \quad e^{ug(z)}.$$

These results are useful since they correspond to the distribution of the number of components in a sequence (or partitional complex) construct and an abelian partitional complex construct, respectively.

Little is known about bivariate GFs defined only implicitly via nonlinear functional equations, a notable exception being [Jacquet and Régnier 1986], [Jacquet and Régnier 1987]. Finally, other multivariate (but less analytical) techniques are used in the analysis of random graph models [Bollobás 1985].

### 3. Sorting Algorithms

In this section we describe several important sorting algorithms, including insertion sort, Shellsort, bubble sort, quicksort, radix-exchange sort, selection sort, heapsort, and merge sort. Some sorting algorithms are more naturally described in an iterative fashion, while the others are more naturally described recursively. In this section we analyze the performance of the “iterative” sorting algorithms in a unified way by using some basic notions of inversion tables and lattice paths; we apply the combinatorial tools of Section 1 to the study of inversions and left-to-right maxima, and we use the techniques of Section 2 to derive asymptotic bounds.

We defer the analyses of the sorting algorithms that are more “recursive” in nature until Section 4, where we exploit the close connections between their recursive structures and the tree models studied in Section 4. Yet another class of sorting algorithms, those based upon distribution sorting, will be described and analyzed in Section 5.

For purposes of average-case analysis of sorting, we assume that the input array (or input file)  $x[1]x[2] \dots x[n]$  forms a random permutation of the  $n$  elements. A permutation of a set of  $n$  elements is a 1–1 mapping from the set onto itself. Typically we represent the set of  $n$  elements by  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . We use the notation  $\sigma = \sigma_1\sigma_2 \dots \sigma_n$  to denote the permutation that maps  $i$  to  $\sigma_i$ , for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Our input data model is often justified in practice, such as when the key values are generated independently from a common continuous distribution.

#### 3.1. Inversions

The common thread running through the the analyses of many sorting algorithms is the connection between the running time of the algorithm and the number of inversions in the input. An *inversion* in permutation  $\sigma$  is an “out of order” pair  $(\sigma_k, \sigma_j)$  of elements, in which  $k < j$  but  $\sigma_k > \sigma_j$ . The number of inversions is thus a measure of the amount of disorder in a permutation. Let us define the RV  $I_n$  to be the number of inversions; the number of inversions in a particular permutation  $\sigma$  is denoted  $I_n[\sigma]$ . This concept was introduced two centuries ago as a means of computing the determinant of a matrix  $A = (A_{i,j})$ :

$$\det A = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^{I_n[\sigma]} A_{1,\sigma_1} A_{2,\sigma_2} \dots A_{n,\sigma_n}, \quad (1)$$

where  $S_n$  denotes the set of  $n!$  possible permutations.

DEFINITION 1. The *inversion table* of the permutation  $\sigma = \sigma_1\sigma_2 \dots \sigma_n$  is the ordered sequence

$$b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n, \quad \text{where } b_k = |\{1 \leq j < \sigma_k^{-1} \mid \sigma_j > k\}|. \quad (2a)$$

(Here  $\sigma^{-1}$  denotes the inverse permutation to  $\sigma$ ; that is,  $\sigma_k^{-1}$  denotes the index of  $k$  in  $\sigma$ .) In other words,  $b_k$  is equal to the number of elements in the permutation  $\sigma$  that precede  $k$  but have value  $> k$ .

The number of inversions can be expressed in terms of inversion tables as follows:

$$I_n[\sigma] = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} b_k.$$

It is easy to see that there is a 1–1 correspondence between permutations and inversion tables. An inversion table has the property that

$$0 \leq b_k \leq n - k, \quad \text{for each } 1 \leq k \leq n, \quad (2b)$$

and moreover all such combinations are possible. We can thus view inversion tables as a cross product

$$\prod_{1 \leq k \leq n} \{0, 1, \dots, n - k\}. \quad (2c)$$

We associate each inversion table  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n$  with the monomial  $x_{b_1} x_{b_2} \dots x_{b_n}$ , and we define the generating function

$$F(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} x_{b_1} x_{b_2} \dots x_{b_n}, \quad (3)$$

which is the sum of the monomials over all  $n!$  permutations. By (2b) the possibilities for  $b_k$  correspond to the term  $(x_0 + x_1 + \dots + x_{n-k})$ , and we get the following fundamental formula, which will play a central rôle in our analyses:

**THEOREM 1.** *The generating function defined in (3) satisfies*

$$F(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) = x_0(x_0 + x_1) \dots (x_0 + x_1 + \dots + x_{n-1}).$$

Theorem 1 is a powerful tool for obtaining statistics related to inversion tables. For example, let us define  $I_{n,k}$  to be the number of permutations of  $n$  elements having  $k$  inversions. By Theorem 1, the OGF  $I(z) = \sum_k I_{n,k} z^k$  is given by

$$I_n(z) = z^0(z^0 + z^1)(z^0 + z^1 + z^2) \dots (z^0 + z^1 + \dots + z^{n-1}), \quad (4a)$$

since each monomial  $x_{b_1} x_{b_2} \dots x_{b_n}$  in (3) contributes  $z^{b_1+b_2+\dots+b_n}$  to  $I_n(z)$ . We can convert (4a) into the PGF  $\Phi_n(z) = \sum_k \Pr\{I_n = k\} z^k$  by dividing by  $|S_n| = n!$ :

$$\Phi_n(z) = \sum_k \frac{I_{n,k}}{n!} z^k = \prod_{1 \leq k \leq n} b_k(z), \quad \text{where } b_k(z) = \frac{z^0 + z^1 + \dots + z^{n-k}}{n - k + 1}. \quad (4b)$$

The expected number of inversions  $\overline{I_n}$  and the variance  $\text{var}(I_n)$  are thus equal to

$$\overline{I_n} = \Phi'_n(1) = \frac{n(n-1)}{4}; \quad (4c)$$

$$\text{var}(I_n) = \Phi''_n(1) + \Phi'_n(1) - (\Phi'_n(1))^2 = \frac{n(2n+5)(n-1)}{72}. \quad (4d)$$

The mean  $\overline{I_n}$  is equal to half the worst-case value of  $I_n$ . Note from (4b) that  $\Phi_n(z)$  is a product of individual PGFs  $b_k(z)$ , which indicates by a remark at the beginning of Section 2.5 that  $I_n$  can be expressed as the sum of independent RVs. This suggests another way of looking at the derivation: The decomposition of  $I_n$  in question is the obvious one

based upon the inversion table (2a); we have  $I_n = b_1 + b_2 + \dots + b_n$ , and the PGF of  $b_k$  is  $b_k(z)$  given above in (4b). Eqs. (4c) and (4d) follow from summing  $\overline{b_k}$  and  $\text{var}(b_k)$ , for  $1 \leq k \leq n$ . By a generalization of the central limit theorem to sums of independent but nonidentical RVs, it follows that  $(I_n - \overline{I_n})/\sigma_{I_n}$  converges to the normal distribution, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

Another RV important to our sorting analyses is the number of *left-to-right minima*, denoted by  $L_n$ . For a permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$ ,  $L_n[\sigma]$  is the number of elements in  $\sigma$  that are less than all the preceding elements in  $\sigma$ . In terms of (2a), we have

$$L_n[\sigma] = |\{1 \leq k \leq n \mid b_k = \sigma_k^{-1} - 1\}|.$$

Let us define  $L_{n,k}$  to be the number of permutations of  $n$  elements having  $k$  left-to-right minima. By Theorem 1, the OGF  $L_n(z) = \sum_k L_{n,k} z^k$  is given by

$$L_n(z) = z(z+1)(z+2)\dots(z+n-1), \tag{5a}$$

since the contribution to  $L_n(z)$  from the  $x_j$  term in  $(x_0 + x_1 + \dots + x_{k-1})$  in Theorem 3 is  $z$  if  $j = k - 1$  and 1 otherwise. The PGF  $A_n(z) = \sum_k \Pr\{L_n = k\} z^k$  is thus

$$A_n(z) = \sum_k \frac{L_{n,k}}{n!} z^k = \prod_{1 \leq k \leq n} \ell_k(z), \quad \text{where } \ell_k(z) = \frac{z+k-1}{k}. \tag{5b}$$

Taking derivatives as above, we get

$$\overline{L_n} = A'_n(1) = H_n; \tag{5c}$$

$$\text{var}(L_n) = A''_n(1) + A'_n(1) - (A'_n(1))^2 = H_n - H_n^{(2)}, \tag{5d}$$

where  $H_n$  is the  $n$ th harmonic number  $\sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} 1/k$ , and  $H_n^{(2)} = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} 1/k^2$ . The mean  $\overline{L_n}$  is much less than the worst-case value of  $L_n$ , which is  $n$ . As above, we can look at this derivation in the way suggested by the product decomposition of  $A_n(z)$  in (5b): We can decompose  $L_n$  into a sum of independent RVs  $\ell_1 + \ell_2 + \dots + \ell_n$ , where  $\ell_k[\sigma]$  is 1 if  $\sigma_k$  is a left-to-right minimum, and 0 otherwise. The PGF for  $\ell_k$  is  $\ell_k(z)$  given in (5b), and summing  $\overline{\ell_k}$  and  $\text{var}(\ell_k)$  for  $1 \leq k \leq n$  gives (5c) and (5d). The central limit theorem shows that  $L_n$ , when normalized, converges to the normal distribution.

The above information about  $I_n$  and  $L_n$  suffices for our purposes of analyzing sorting algorithms, but it is interesting to point out that Theorem 1 has further applications. For example, let  $T_{n,i,j,k}$  be the number of permutations  $\sigma \in S_n$  such that  $I_n[\sigma] = i$ ,  $L_n[\sigma] = j$ , and there are  $k$  *left-to-right maxima*. By Theorem 1, the OGF of  $T_{n,i,j,k}$  is

$$\begin{aligned} T_n(x, y, z) &= \sum_{i,j,k} T_{n,i,j,k} x^i y^j z^k \\ &= yz(y+xz)(y+x+x^2z)\dots(y+x+x^2+\dots+x^{n-1}z). \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

## 3.2. Insertion Sort

Insertion sort is the method card players typically use to sort card hands. In the  $k$ th loop, for  $1 \leq k \leq n - 1$ , the first  $k$  elements  $x[1], \dots, x[k]$  are already in sorted order, and the  $(k + 1)$ st element  $x[k + 1]$  is inserted into its proper place with respect to the preceding elements.

In the simplest variant, called *straight insertion*, the correct position for  $x[k + 1]$  is found by successively comparing  $x[k + 1]$  with  $x[k], x[k - 1], \dots$  until an element  $\leq x[k + 1]$  is found. The intervening elements are simultaneously bumped one position to the right to make room. (For simplicity, we assume that there is a dummy element  $x[0]$  with value  $-\infty$  so that an element  $\leq x[k + 1]$  is always found.) When the values in the input file are distinct, the number of comparisons in the  $k$ th loop is equal to 1 plus the number of elements  $> x[k + 1]$  that precede  $x[k + 1]$  in the input. In terms of the inversion table (2a), this is equal to  $1 + b_{x[k+1]}$ . By summing on  $k$ , we find that the total number of comparisons used by straight insertion to sort a permutation  $\sigma$  is  $I_n[\sigma] + n - 1$ . The following theorem follows directly from (4c) and (4d):

**THEOREM 2.** *The mean and the variance of the number of comparisons performed by straight insertion when sorting a random permutation are  $n^2/4 + 3n/4 - 1$  and  $n(2n + 5)(n - 1)/72$ , respectively.*

An alternative to straight insertion is to store the already-sorted elements in a binary search tree; the  $k$ th loop consists of inserting element  $x[k + 1]$  into the tree. After all  $n$  elements are inserted, the sorted order can be obtained via an inorder traversal. A balanced binary search tree can be used to insure  $O(n \log n)$  worst-case time performance, but the overhead of the balancing operations slows down the algorithm in practice. When the tree is not required to be balanced, there is little overhead, and the average running time is faster. We defer the analysis until our discussion of binary search trees in Section 4.2.

## 3.3. Shellsort

The main reason why straight insertion is relatively slow is that the items are inserted sequentially; each comparison reduces the number of inversions (which is  $\Theta(n^2)$  on the average) by at most 1. Thus, the average running time is  $\Theta(n^2)$ . D. L. Shell [1959] proposed an efficient variant (now appropriately called *Shellsort*) in which the insertion process is done in several passes of successive refinements. For a given input size  $n$ , the passes are determined by an “increment sequence”  $h_t, h_{t-1}, \dots, h_1$ , where  $h_1 = 1$ . The  $h_i$  pass consists of straight insertion sorts of each of the  $h_i$  subfiles

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \text{subfile 1 :} & x[1] x[1 + h_i] x[1 + 2h_i] \dots \\
 \text{subfile 2 :} & x[2] x[2 + h_i] x[2 + 2h_i] \dots \\
 & \dots \quad \dots \\
 \text{subfile } h_i : & x[h_i] x[2h_i] x[3h_i] \dots
 \end{array} \tag{7}$$

In the early passes (when the increments are typically large), elements can be displaced far from their previous positions with only a few comparisons; the later passes “fine tune” the

placement of elements. The last pass, when  $h_1 = 1$ , consists of a single straight insertion sort of the entire array; we know from Section 3.2 that this is fast when the number of remaining inversions is small.

**Two-Ordered Permutations.** A good introduction to the average-case analysis of Shell-sort is the two-pass version with increment sequence  $(2, 1)$ . We assume that the input is a random permutation. Our measure of complexity is the total number of inversions encountered in the subfiles (7) during the course of the algorithm. For simplicity, we restrict ourselves to the case when  $n$  is even.

The first pass is easy to analyze, since it consists of two independent straight insertion sorts, each of size  $n/2$ . We call a permutation  $k$ -ordered if  $x[i] < x[i+k]$ , for all  $1 \leq i \leq n-k$ . At the end of the first pass, the permutation is 2-ordered, and by our randomness assumption it is easy to see that each of the  $\binom{n}{n/2}$  possible 2-ordered permutations is equally likely. The analysis of the last pass consists in determining the average number of inversions in a random 2-ordered permutation.

**THEOREM 3.** *The mean and the variance of the number of inversions  $I_{2n}$  in a random 2-ordered permutation of size  $2n$  are*

$$\overline{I_{2n}} = \frac{n4^{n-1}}{\binom{2n}{n}} \sim \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{4} n^{3/2}, \quad \text{var}(I_{2n}) \sim \left( \frac{7}{30} - \frac{\pi}{16} \right) n^3.$$

**PROOF.** The starting point of the proof is the important 1–1 correspondence between the set of 2-ordered permutations of  $2n$  elements and the set of monotone paths from the upper-left corner  $(0, 0)$  to the bottom-right corner  $(n, n)$  of the  $n$ -by- $n$  lattice. The  $k$ th step of the path is  $\downarrow$  if  $k$  appears in an odd position in the permutation, and it is  $\rightarrow$  if  $k$  appears in an even position. The path for a typical permutation  $\sigma$  is given in Figure 1. The sorted permutation has the “staircase path” shown by dotted lines. The important property of this representation is that *the number  $I_{2n}[\sigma]$  of inversions in  $\sigma$  is equal to the area between the staircase path and  $\sigma$ 's path.*

There is an easy heuristic argument to show why  $\overline{I_{2n}}$  should be  $\Theta(n^{3/2})$ : Intuitively, the first  $n$  steps of a random path from  $(0, 0)$  to  $(n, n)$  are like a random walk, and similarly for the last  $n$  steps. (The transition probabilities are slightly different from those for a random walk since the complete path is constrained to have exactly  $n$   $\downarrow$  moves and  $n$   $\rightarrow$  moves.) It is well known that random walks tend to be  $\Theta(\sqrt{n})$  units away from the diagonal after  $n$  steps, thus suggesting that the area between the walk and the staircase path is  $\Theta(n^{3/2})$ .

An extension to the notions of admissibility in Section 1.2 provides an elegant and precise way to count the area, cumulated among all possible 2-ordered permutations. Let us define  $\mathcal{P}$  to be the set of all possible paths of length  $\geq 0$  from  $(0, 0)$  to another point on the diagonal, and  $\hat{\mathcal{P}}$  to be the subset of all “arches” (paths that meet the diagonal only at the endpoints) of positive length. Each path in  $\mathcal{P}$  can be decomposed uniquely into a concatenation of zero or more arches in  $\hat{\mathcal{P}}$ . In the language of Theorem 1.2,  $\mathcal{P}$  is the sequence class of  $\hat{\mathcal{P}}$ :

$$\mathcal{P} = \hat{\mathcal{P}}^*. \tag{8a}$$

For example, the path  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  in Figure 1 consists of four paths in  $\hat{\mathcal{P}}$ : from  $(0, 0)$  to  $(3, 3)$ , from  $(3, 3)$  to  $(4, 4)$ , from  $(4, 4)$  to  $(6, 6)$ , and from  $(6, 6)$  to  $(8, 8)$ . For reasons of symmetry,

**Figure 1.** Correspondence between 2-ordered permutations of  $2n$  elements and monotone paths from  $(0,0)$  to  $(n,n)$ , for  $n = 8$ . The dark path corresponds to the permutation  $\sigma = 3\ 15\ 26\ 47\ 89\ 1110\ 1215\ 1316\ 14$ . The dashed-line staircase path represents the sorted permutation. The number of inversions in  $\sigma$  (namely, 9) is equal to the shaded area between  $\sigma$ 's path and the staircase path.

it is useful to look at paths that stay to one side (say, the right side) of the diagonal. The restrictions of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\widehat{\mathcal{P}}$  to the right side of the diagonal are denoted  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $\widehat{\mathcal{S}}$ , respectively. As above, we have

$$\mathcal{S} = \widehat{\mathcal{S}}^*. \quad (8b)$$

Each path has the same number of  $\downarrow$  moves as  $\rightarrow$  moves. We define the *size* of path  $p$ , denoted  $|p|$ , to be the number of  $\downarrow$  moves in  $p$ . The other parameter of interest is the area between  $p$  and the staircase path; we call this area the *weight* of  $p$  and denote it by  $\|p\|$ . The size and weight functions are linear; that is,  $|pq| = |p| + |q|$  and  $\|pq\| = \|p\| + \|q\|$ , where  $pq$  denotes the concatenation of paths  $p$  and  $q$ .

Let  $P_{n,k}$  (respectively,  $\widehat{P}_{n,k}$ ,  $S_{n,k}$ ,  $\widehat{S}_{n,k}$ ) be the number of paths  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  (respectively,  $\widehat{\mathcal{P}}$ ,  $\mathcal{S}$ ,  $\widehat{\mathcal{S}}$ ) such that  $|p| = n$  and  $\|p\| = k$ . We define the OGF

$$P(u, z) = \sum_{k,n} P_{n,k} u^k z^n, \quad (9)$$

and we define the OGFs  $\widehat{P}(u, z)$ ,  $S(u, z)$ , and  $\widehat{S}(u, z)$  similarly. The mean and variance of  $I_{2n}$  can be expressed readily in terms of  $P(u, z)$ :

$$\overline{I_{2n}} = \frac{1}{\binom{2n}{n}} [z^n] \left. \frac{\partial P(u, z)}{\partial u} \right|_{u=1}; \quad (10a)$$

$$\overline{I_{2n}(I_{2n} - 1)} = \frac{1}{\binom{2n}{n}} [z^n] \left. \frac{\partial^2 P(u, z)}{\partial u^2} \right|_{u=1}; \quad (10b)$$

$$\text{var}(I_{2n}) = \overline{I_{2n}(I_{2n} - 1)} + \overline{I_{2n}} - (\overline{I_{2n}})^2. \quad (10c)$$

We can generalize our admissibility approach in Theorem 1.2 to handle OGFs with two variables:

LEMMA 1. *The sequence construct is admissible with respect to the size and weight functions:*

$$\mathcal{P} = \widehat{\mathcal{P}}^* \quad \Longrightarrow \quad P(u, z) = \frac{1}{1 - \widehat{P}(u, z)}; \quad (11)$$

$$\mathcal{S} = \widehat{\mathcal{S}}^* \quad \Longrightarrow \quad S(u, z) = \frac{1}{1 - \widehat{S}(u, z)}. \quad (12)$$

PROOF OF LEMMA 1. A equivalent definition of the OGF  $P(u, z)$  is

$$P(u, z) = \sum_{p \in \mathcal{P}} u^{\|p\|} z^{|p|}.$$

Each nontrivial path  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  can be decomposed uniquely into a concatenation  $\widehat{p}_1 \widehat{p}_2 \dots \widehat{p}_\ell$  of nontrivial paths in  $\widehat{\mathcal{P}}$ . By the linearity of the size and weight functions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} P(u, z) &= \sum_{\substack{\widehat{p}_1, \widehat{p}_2, \dots, \widehat{p}_\ell \in \widehat{\mathcal{P}} \\ \ell \geq 0}} u^{\|\widehat{p}_1\| + \|\widehat{p}_2\| + \dots + \|\widehat{p}_\ell\|} z^{|\widehat{p}_1| + |\widehat{p}_2| + \dots + |\widehat{p}_\ell|} \\ &= \sum_{\ell \geq 0} \left( \sum_{\widehat{p} \in \widehat{\mathcal{P}}} u^{\|\widehat{p}\|} z^{|\widehat{p}|} \right)^\ell = \sum_{\ell \geq 0} \left( \widehat{P}(u, z) \right)^\ell = \frac{1}{1 - \widehat{P}(u, z)}. \end{aligned}$$

The proof of (12) is identical. ■

Lemma 1 gives us two formulæ relating the four OGFs  $P(u, z)$ ,  $\widehat{P}(u, z)$ ,  $S(u, z)$ , and  $\widehat{S}(u, z)$ . The following decomposition gives us another two relations, which closes the cycle and lets us solve for the OGFs: Every path  $\widehat{s} \in \widehat{\mathcal{S}}$  can be decomposed uniquely into the path  $\rightarrow s \downarrow$ , for some  $s \in \mathcal{S}$ , and the size and weight functions of  $\widehat{s}$  and  $s$  are related by  $|\widehat{s}| = |s| + 1$  and  $\|\widehat{s}\| = \|s\| + |s| + 1$ . Hence, we have

$$\widehat{S}(u, z) = \sum_{s \in \mathcal{S}} u^{\|s\| + |s| + 1} z^{|s| + 1} = uz \sum_{s \in \mathcal{S}} u^{\|s\|} (uz)^{|s|} = uz S(u, uz). \quad (13)$$

Each path in  $\widehat{\mathcal{P}}$  is either in  $\widehat{\mathcal{S}}$  or in the reflection of  $\widehat{\mathcal{S}}$  about the diagonal, which we call  $\text{refl}(\widehat{\mathcal{S}})$ . For  $\widehat{s} \in \widehat{\mathcal{S}}$ , we have  $|\text{refl}(\widehat{s})| = |\widehat{s}|$  and  $\|\text{refl}(\widehat{s})\| = \|\widehat{s}\| - |\widehat{s}|$ , which gives us

$$\widehat{P}(u, z) = \sum_{\widehat{s} \in \widehat{\mathcal{S}} \cup \text{refl}(\widehat{\mathcal{S}})} u^{\|\widehat{s}\|} z^{|\widehat{s}|} = \sum_{\widehat{s} \in \widehat{\mathcal{S}}} \left( u^{\|\widehat{s}\|} z^{|\widehat{s}|} + u^{\|\widehat{s}\| - |\widehat{s}|} z^{|\widehat{s}|} \right) = \widehat{S}(u, z) + \widehat{S}\left(u, \frac{z}{u}\right). \quad (14)$$

Equations (13) and (14) can be viewed as types of admissibility reductions, similar to those in Lemma 1, except that in this case the weight functions are not linear (the relations between the weight functions involve the size function), thus introducing the  $uz$  and  $z/u$  arguments in the right-hand sides of (13) and (14).

The four relations (11)–(14) allow us to solve for  $P(u, z)$ . Substituting (13) into (12) gives

$$S(u, z) = uzS(u, z)S(u, uz) + 1, \quad (15)$$

and substituting (13) into (14) and the result into (11), we get

$$P(u, z) = (uzS(u, uz) + zS(u, z))P(u, z) + 1. \quad (16)$$

Using (16), we can then express  $\frac{\partial}{\partial u}P(u, z)|_{u=1}$  and  $\frac{\partial^2}{\partial u^2}P(u, z)|_{u=1}$ , which we need for (10), in terms of derivatives of  $S(u, z)$  evaluated at  $u = 1$ , which in turn can be calculated from (15). These calculations are straightforward, but are best done with a symbolic algebra system. ■

ALTERNATE PROOF. We can prove the first part of Theorem 3 in a less elegant way by studying how the file is decomposed after the first pass into the two sorted subfiles

$$X_1 = x[1]x[3]x[5] \dots \quad \text{and} \quad X_2 = x[2]x[4]x[6] \dots$$

We can express  $\overline{I_{2n}}$  as

$$\overline{I_{2n}} = \frac{1}{\binom{2n}{n}} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n \\ 0 \leq j \leq n-1}} A_{i,j}, \quad (17a)$$

where  $A_{i,j}$  is the total number of inversions involving the  $i$ th element of  $X_1$  (namely,  $x[2i-1]$ ), among all 2-ordered permutations in which there are  $j$  elements in  $X_2$  less than  $x[2i-1]$ . The total number of such 2-ordered permutations is

$$\binom{i+j-1}{i-1} \binom{2n-i-j}{n-j},$$

and a simple calculation shows that each contributes  $|i-j|$  inversions to  $A_{i,j}$ . Substituting this into (17a), we get

$$\overline{I_{2n}} = \frac{1}{\binom{2n}{n}} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n \\ 0 \leq j \leq n-1}} |i-j| \binom{i+j-1}{i-1} \binom{2n-i-j}{n-j}, \quad (17b)$$

and the rest of the derivation consists of manipulation of binomial coefficients. The derivation of the variance is similar. ■

The increment sequence  $(2, 1)$  is not very interesting in practice, because the first pass still takes quadratic time, on the average. We can generalize the above derivation to show that the average number  $\overline{I_n}$  of inversions in a random  $h$ -ordered permutation is

$$\overline{I_n} = \frac{2^{2q-1}q!q!}{(2q+1)!} \left( \binom{h}{2}q(q+1) + \binom{r}{2}(q+1) - \binom{h-r}{2}\frac{q}{2} \right), \quad (18)$$

where  $q = \lfloor n/h \rfloor$  and  $r = n \bmod h$  [Hunt 1967]. This allows us to determine (for large  $h$  and larger  $n$ ) the best two-pass increment sequence  $(h, 1)$ . In the first pass, there are  $h$  insertion

sorts of size  $\sim n/h$ ; by (4c), the total number of inversions in the subfiles is  $\sim n^2/(4h)$ , on the average. By (18), we can approximate the average number of inversions encountered in the second pass by  $\overline{I_n} \sim \frac{1}{8}\sqrt{\pi h}n^{3/2}$ . The total number of inversions in both passes is thus  $\sim n^2/(4h) + \frac{1}{8}\sqrt{\pi h}n^{3/2}$ , on the average, which is minimized when  $h \sim (16n/\pi)^{1/3}$ . The resulting expected running time is  $O(n^{5/3})$ .

When there are more than two passes, an interesting phenomenon occurs: *if an  $h$ -sorted file is  $k$ -sorted, the file remains  $h$ -sorted*. Yao [1980] shows how to combine this fact with an extension of the approach used in (17a) and (17b) to analyze increments of the form  $(h, k, 1)$ , for constant values  $h$  and  $k$ . Not much else is known in the average case, except when each increment is a multiple of the next. In that case, the running time can be reduced to  $O(n^{1.5+\epsilon/2})$ , where  $\epsilon = 1/(2^t - 1)$  and  $t$  is the number of increments.

V. Pratt discovered that we get an  $O(n \log^2 n)$ -time algorithm in the worst case if we use all the increments of the form  $2^p 3^q$ , for  $p, q \geq 0$ . For maximum efficiency, the increments need not be in decreasing order, but  $2^{p+1} 3^q$  and  $2^p 3^{q+1}$  should precede  $2^p 3^q$ . This particular approach is typically not used in practice, since the number of increments (and hence the number of passes) is  $O(\log^2 n)$ . Sequences with only  $O(\log n)$  increments that result in  $O(n^{1+\epsilon})$  running time are reported in [Incerpi and Sedgewick, 1985]. Lower bounds on the worst-case sorting time for various types of increment sequences with  $O(\log n)$  increments are given in [Weiss and Sedgewick 1988], [Cypher 1989]. For example, Shellsort requires  $\Omega(n \log^2 n / \log \log n)$  worst-case time when the increment sequence is monotonically decreasing [Cypher 1989].

A possible application of Shellsort is to the construction of efficient networks for sorting. Sorting networks operate via a sequence of pairwise comparison/exchanges, where the choice of which pair of elements to compare next is made independently of the outcomes of the previous comparisons. Comparison/exchanges that involve different elements can be done in parallel by the network, so up to  $n/2$  operations can be done simultaneously in one parallel step. Sorting networks thus require  $\Omega(\log n)$  parallel steps (or depth). K. E. Batcher developed practical sorting networks of depth  $\frac{1}{2}k^2$ , for  $n = 2^k$ , based upon his odd-even merge and bitonic sort networks [Batcher 1968] [Knuth 1973b]. Recently, Ajtai, Komlós, and Szemerédi [1983] solved a longstanding open problem by constructing a sorting network of depth  $O(\log n)$ ; a complete coverage is given in [Pippenger 1989]. The AKS sorting network is a theoretical breakthrough, but in terms of practicality the network is not very useful since the coefficient implicit in the Big-oh term is huge. If an  $O(n \log n)$ -time Shellsort is found, it might be possible to modify it to yield a sorting network of depth  $O(\log n)$  that is practical. However, the lower bound result quoted above [Cypher 1986] shows that, in order to find an  $O(n \log n)$ -time Shellsort, the increment sequence will have to be fundamentally different from those used in practice.

### 3.4. Bubble Sort

The bubble sort algorithm works by a series of passes. In each pass, some final portion  $x[\ell + 1] x[\ell + 2] \dots x[n]$  of the array is already known to be in sorted order, and the largest element in the initial part of the array  $x[1] x[2] \dots x[\ell]$  is “bubbled” to the right by a sequence of  $\ell - 1$  pairwise comparisons

$$x[1] : x[2], \quad x[2] : x[3], \quad \dots, \quad x[\ell - 1] : x[\ell].$$

In each comparison, the elements exchange place if they are out of order. The value of  $\ell$  is reset to the largest  $t$  such that the comparison  $x[t] : x[t + 1]$  required an exchange, and then the next pass starts.

The bubble sort algorithm itself is not very useful in practice, since it runs more slowly than insertion sort and selection sort, yet is more complicated to program. However, its analysis provides an interesting use of inversion statistics and asymptotic techniques. The running time of bubble sort depends upon three quantities: the number of inversions  $I_n$ , the number of passes  $A_n$ , and the number of comparisons  $C_n$ . The analysis of  $I_n$  has already been given in Section 3.1.

**THEOREM 4** [Knuth, 1973b]. *The average number of passes and comparisons done in bubble sort, on a random permutation of size  $n$ , is*

$$\overline{A_n} = n - \sqrt{\frac{\pi n}{2}} + O(1), \quad \overline{C_n} = \frac{1}{2} (n^2 - n \log n - (\gamma + \log 2 - 1)n) + O(\sqrt{n}).$$

**PROOF.** Each pass in bubble sort reduces all the nonzero entries in the inversion table by 1. There are at most  $k$  passes in the algorithm when each entry in the original inversion table is  $\leq k$ . The number of such inversion tables can be obtained via Theorem 1 by substituting  $x_i = \delta_{i \leq k}$  into  $F(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , which gives  $k! k^{n-k}$ . We use the notation  $\delta_R$  to denote 1 if relation  $R$  is true, and 0 otherwise. Plugging this into the definition of expected value, we get

$$\overline{A_n} = n + 1 - \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} k! k^{n-k}. \quad (19)$$

The summation can be shown to be equal to  $\sqrt{\pi n/2} - 2/3 + O(1/\sqrt{n})$  by an application of the Euler-Maclaurin summation formula (Theorem 2.1).

The average number of comparisons  $\overline{C_n}$  can be determined in a similar way. For the moment, let us restrict our attention to the  $j$ th pass. Let  $c_j$  be the number of comparisons done in the  $j$ th pass. We have  $c_j = \ell - 1$ , where  $\ell$  is the upper index of the subarray processed in pass  $j$ . We can characterize  $\ell$  as the last position in the array at the beginning of pass  $j$  that contains an element which moved to the left one slot during the previous pass. We denote the value of the element in position  $\ell$  by  $i$ . It follows that all the elements in positions  $\ell + 1, \ell + 2, \dots, n$  have value  $> i$ . We noted earlier that each nonzero entry in the inversion table decreases by 1 in each pass. Therefore, the number of inversions for element  $i$  at the beginning of the  $j$ th pass is  $b_i - j + 1$ , and element  $i$  is located in array position  $\ell = i + b_i - j + 1$ . This gives us  $c_j = i + b_i - j$ .

Without *a priori* knowledge of  $\ell$  or  $i$ , we can calculate  $c_j$  by using the formula

$$c_j = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \{i + b_i - j \mid b_i \geq j - 1\}. \tag{20}$$

The condition  $b_i \geq j - 1$  restricts attention to those elements that move left one place in pass  $j - 1$ ; it is easy to see that the term in (20) is maximized at the correct  $i$ . To make use of (20), let us define  $f_j(k)$  to be the number of inversion tables (2a) such that either  $b_i < j - 1$  or  $i + b_i - j \leq k$ . We can evaluate  $f_j(k)$  from Theorem 1 by substituting  $x_i = 1$  if  $b_i < j - 1$  or  $i + b_i - j \leq k$ , and  $x_i = 0$  otherwise. A simple calculation gives

$$f_j(k) = (j + k)! (j - 1)^{n-j+k}, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq k \leq n - j.$$

By the definition of expected value, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{C}_n &= \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq n \\ 0 \leq k \leq n-j}} k(f_j(k) - f_j(k - 1)) \\ &= \binom{n+1}{2} - \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq n \\ 0 \leq k \leq n-j}} f_j(k) \\ &= \binom{n+1}{2} - \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{0 \leq r < s \leq n} s! r^{n-s}. \end{aligned} \tag{21a}$$

The intermediate step follows by summation by parts. The summation in (21a) can be simplified using the Euler-Maclaurin summation formula into series of sums of the form

$$\frac{1}{m!} \sum_{1 \leq t < m} (m - t)! (m - t)^t t^q, \quad \text{for } q \geq -1, \tag{21b}$$

where  $m = n + 1$ . By applying Stirling's approximation, we find that the summand in (21b) decreases exponentially when  $t > m^{1/2+\epsilon}$ , and we can reduce the problem further to that of approximating  $F_q(1/m)$ , where

$$F_q(x) = \sum_{k \geq 1} e^{-k^2 x/2} k^q, \quad \text{for } q \geq -1, \tag{22a}$$

as  $m \rightarrow \infty$ . The derivation can be carried out using Laplace's method for sums and the Euler-Maclaurin summation formula (see Section 2.1), but things get complicated for the case  $q = -1$ . A more elegant derivation is to use Mellin transforms. The function  $F_q(x)$  is a harmonic sum, and its Mellin transform  $F_q^*(s)$  is

$$F_q^*(s) = \Gamma(s) \zeta(2s - q) 2^s, \tag{22b}$$

defined in the fundamental strip  $\langle 0; +\infty \rangle$ . The asymptotic expansion of  $F_q(1/m)$  follows by computing the residues in the left half-plane  $\Re(s) \leq 0$ . There are simple poles at  $s = -1, -2, \dots$  because of the term  $\Gamma(s)$ . When  $q = -1$ , the  $\Gamma(s)$  and  $\zeta(2s - q)$  terms combine to contribute a double pole at  $s = 0$ . When  $q \geq 0$ ,  $\Gamma(s)$  contributes a simple pole at  $s = 0$ , and  $\zeta(2s - q)$  has a simple pole only at  $s = (q + 1)/2 > 0$ . Putting everything together, we find that

$$\frac{1}{n!} \sum_{0 \leq r < s \leq n} s! r^{n-s} = \frac{1}{2} n \log n + \frac{1}{2} (\gamma + \log 2) n + O(\sqrt{n}). \tag{23}$$

The formula for  $\overline{C}_n$  follows immediately from (21a). ■

After  $k$  passes in the bubble sort algorithm, the number of elements known to be in their final place is typically larger than  $k$ ; the variable  $\ell$  is always set to be as small as possible so as to minimize the size of the array that must be considered in a pass. The fact that (23) is  $O(n \log n)$  implies that the number of comparisons for large  $n$  is not significantly less than that of the more naïve algorithm in which the bubbling process in the  $k$ th pass is done on the subarray  $x[1]x[2] \dots x[n - k + 1]$ .

### 3.5. Quicksort

We can get a more efficient exchange-based sorting algorithm by using a divide-and-conquer approach. In the *quicksort* method, due to C. A. R. Hoare, an element  $s$  is chosen (say, the first element in the file), the file is partitioned into the part  $\leq s$  and the part  $> s$ , and then each half is sorted recursively. The recursive decomposition can be analyzed using the sophisticated tools we develop in Section 4.2 for binary search trees, which have a similar decomposition, and so we defer the analysis until Section 4.2. The expected number of comparisons is  $\sim 2n \log n$ . Analysis techniques and results for quicksort can be found in [Knuth 1973b] and [Sedgewick 1977b].

Quicksort is an extremely good general-purpose sorting routine. A big drawback of the version described above is its worst-case performance: it requires  $\Theta(n^2)$  time to sort a file that is already sorted or nearly sorted! A good way to guard against guaranteed bad behavior is to choose the partitioning element  $s$  to be a random element in the current subfile, in which case our above analysis applies. Another good method is to choose  $s$  to be the median of three elements from the subfile (say, the first, middle, and last elements). This also has the effect of reducing the average number of comparisons to  $\sim \frac{12}{7}n \log n$ .

If the smaller of the two subfiles is always processed first after each partition, then the recursion stack contains at most  $\log n$  entries. But by clever programming, we can simulate the stack with only a constant amount of space, at a very slight increase in computing time [Dürjan 1986], [Huang and Knuth 1986]. The analysis of quicksort in the presence of some equal keys is given in [Sedgewick 1977a].

### 3.6. Radix-Exchange Sort

The *radix-exchange sort* algorithm is an exchange-based algorithm that uses divide-and-conquer in a different way from quicksort. The recursive decomposition is based upon the individual bits of the keys. In pass  $k$ , the keys are partitioned into two groups: the group whose  $k$ th least significant bit is 0, and the group whose  $k$ th least significant bit is 1. The partitioning is done in a “stable” manner so that the relative order of the keys within each group is the same as before the partitioning. Then the 1-group is appended to the 0-group, and the next pass begins. After  $t$  passes, where  $t$  is the number of bits in the keys, the algorithm terminates.

In this case, the recursive decomposition is identical to radix-exchange tries, which we shall study in a general context in Section 4.3, and the statistics of interest for radix-exchange sorting can be expressed directly in terms of corresponding parameters of tries. We defer the details to Section 4.3.

### 3.7. Selection Sort and Heapsort

Selection sort in some respects is the inverse of insertion sort, because the order in which the elements are processed is based upon the output order than upon the input order. In the  $k$ th pass, for  $1 \leq k \leq n - 1$ , the  $k$ th smallest element is selected and is put into its final place  $x[i]$ .

**Straight Selection.** In the simplest variant, called *straight selection sort*, the  $k$ th smallest element is found by a sequential scan of  $x[k] x[k + 1] \dots x[n]$ , and it changes places with the current  $x[k]$ . Unlike insertion sort, the algorithm is not stable; that is, two elements with the same value might be output in the reverse of the order that they appear in the input.

The number of comparisons performed is always

$$C_n = (n - 1) + (n - 2) + \dots + 1 = \frac{n(n - 1)}{2}.$$

The number of times a new minimum is found (the number of data movements) in the  $k$ th pass is the number of left-to-right minima  $L_{n-k+1}$  encountered in  $x[k] x[k + 1] \dots x[n]$ , minus 1. All permutations of  $\{x[k], x[k + 1], \dots, x[n]\}$  are equally likely. By (5c), the average number of updates of the minimum over the course of the algorithm is

$$\sum_{1 \leq k \leq n-1} (\overline{L_{n-k+1}} - 1) = (n + 1)H_n - 2n = n \log n + (\gamma - 2)n + \log n + O(1).$$

The variance is much more difficult to compute, since the contributions  $L_{n-k+1}$  from the individual passes are not independent. If the contributions were independent, then by (5d) the variance would be  $\sim n \log n$ . Yao [1988] shows by relating the variance to a geometric stochastic process that the variance is  $\sim \alpha n^{3/2}$ , and he gives the constant  $\alpha = 0.91 \dots$  explicitly in summation form.

**Heapsort.** A more sophisticated way of selecting the minimum, called *heapsort*, due to J. W. J. Williams, is based upon the notion of tournament elimination. The  $n - k + 1$  elements to consider in the  $k$ th pass are stored in a heap priority queue. A heap is a tree in which the value of the root of each subtree is less than or equal to the values of the other elements in the subtree. In particular, the smallest element is always at the root. The heaps we use for heapsort have the nice property that the tree is always perfectly balanced, except possibly for the rightmost part of the last level. This allows us to represent the heap as an array  $h$  without need of pointers: the root is element  $h[1]$ , and the children of element  $h[i]$  are stored in  $h[2i]$  and  $h[2i + 1]$ .

The  $k$ th pass of heapsort consists of outputting  $h[1]$  and deleting it from the array; the element stored in  $h[n - k + 1]$  is then moved to  $h[1]$ , and it is “filtered” down to its correct place in  $O(\log n)$  time. The creation of the initial heap can be done in linear time. The worst-case time to sort the  $n$  elements is thus  $O(n \log n)$ . In the average case, the analysis is complicated by a lack of randomness: the heap at the start of the  $k$ th pass, for  $k \geq 2$ , is not a random heap of  $n - k + 1$  elements. Heaps and other types of priority queues are discussed in Section 6.1 and [Mehlhorn and Tsakalidis 1989].

### 3.8. Merge Sort

The first sorting program ever executed on an electronic computer used the following divide-and-conquer approach, known as merge sort: The file is split into two subfiles of equal size (or nearly equal size), each subfile is sorted recursively, and then the two sorted subfiles are merged together in the obvious linear fashion. When done from bottom-up, the algorithm consists of several passes; in each pass, the sorted subfiles are paired off, and each pair is merged together.

The linear nature of the merging process makes it ideal for input files in the form of a linked list and for external sorting applications, in which the file does not fit entirely in internal memory and must instead be stored in external memory (like disk or tape), which is best accessed in a sequential manner. Typically, the merge is of a higher order than 2; for example, four subfiles at a time might be merged together, rather than just two. Considerations other than the number of comparisons, such as the rewind time on tapes and the seek time on disks, affect the running time. An encyclopedic collection of variants of merge sort and their analyses appears in [Knuth, 1973b]. Merge sort algorithms that are optimal for external sorting with multiple disks are discussed in [Aggarwal and Vitter, 1988], [Nodine and Vitter, 1990].

For simplicity, we restrict our attention to the number of comparisons performed during a binary (order-2) merge sort, when  $n = 2^j$ , for some  $j \geq 0$ . All the comparisons take place during the merges. For each  $0 \leq k \leq j-1$ , there are  $2^k$  merges of pairs of sorted subfiles, each subfile of size  $n/2^{k+1} = 2^{j-k-1}$ . If we assume that all  $n!$  permutations are equally likely, it is easy to see that, as far as relative order is concerned, the two subfiles in each merge form a random 2-ordered permutation, independent of the other merges. The number of comparisons to merge two random sorted subfiles of length  $p$  and  $q$  is  $p+q-\mu$ , where  $\mu$  is the number of elements remaining to be output in one subfile when the other subfile becomes exhausted. The probability that  $\mu \geq s$ , for  $s \geq 1$ , is the probability that the  $s$  largest elements are in the same subfile, namely,

$$\frac{p^s}{(p+q)^s} + \frac{q^s}{(p+q)^s},$$

where  $a^b$  denotes the “falling power”  $a(a-1)\dots(a-b+1)$ . Hence, we have

$$\bar{\mu} = \sum_{s \geq 1} \left( \frac{p^s}{(p+q)^s} + \frac{q^s}{(p+q)^s} \right) = \frac{p}{q+1} + \frac{q}{p+1}. \quad (24)$$

By (24), the total number of comparisons used by merge sort, on the average, is

$$\overline{C}_n = j2^j - \sum_{1 \leq k \leq j-1} 2^k \frac{2^{j-k}}{2^{j-k-1} + 1} = n \log_2 n - \alpha n + O(1),$$

where

$$\alpha = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{1}{2^n + 1} = 1.2645\dots$$

The analysis when  $n$  is not a power of 2 involves arithmetic functions based upon the binary representation of  $n$  and can be found in [Knuth, 1973b]. Batcher's odd-even merge and bitonic sort networks, which can be used to construct sorting networks of depth  $\frac{1}{2}(\log_2 n)^2$ , are analyzed in [Batcher 1968], [Knuth 1973b], and [Sedgewick 1978]. Other merging algorithms are covered in [Mehlhorn and Tsakalidis 1989].

## 4. Recursive Decompositions and Algorithms on Trees

In this section we develop a uniform framework for obtaining average-case statistics on four classes of trees—binary and plane trees, binary search trees, radix-exchange tries, and digital search trees. Our statistics, which include number of trees, number of nodes, height, and path length, have numerous applications to the analysis of tree-based searching and symbolic processing algorithms, as well as to the sorting algorithms whose analysis we deferred from Section 2, such as quicksort, binary tree sort, and radix-exchange sort. Our approach has two parts:

1. Each of the four classes of trees has a recursive formulation that lends itself naturally to the symbolic generating function method described in Section 1. The statistic of interest for each tree  $t$  corresponds naturally to a *valuation function* (VF)  $v[t]$ . The key idea which unifies our analyses is an extension of the admissibility concept of Section 1: A recursive definition of the VF translates directly into a functional equation involving the generating function. The type of generating function used (either OGF or EGF) and the type of functional equation that results depend upon the particular nature of the recursion.
2. We determine the coefficients of the GF based upon the functional equation resulting from step 1. Sometimes an explicit closed form is obtained, but typically we apply the asymptotic methods of Section 2, our particular approach depending upon the nature of the functional equation.

### 4.1. Binary Trees and Plane Trees

Binary trees and plane trees provide a natural representation for many types of symbolic expressions and recursive structures. This section studies statistical models under which all trees of a given size are equally likely. Such models are not applicable to the study of binary search trees, radix-exchange tries, and digital search trees, which we cover in Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4, but when enriched slightly they provide good models for algorithms operating on expression trees, term trees, and Lisp structures [Clark 1979].

We begin by considering the class  $\mathcal{B}$  of *binary trees* defined in Section 1.1:

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\blacksquare\} + (\{\circ\} \times \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{B}), \quad (1)$$

where  $\blacksquare$  represents an external node and  $\circ$  an internal node. The size of a binary tree is the number of internal nodes in the tree.

The cartesian product decomposition in (1) suggests that we represent our statistic of interest via an OGF. Further motivation for this choice is given in Eqs. (1.2) and (1.3). We use  $v[t]$  to represent the valuation function  $v$  applied to tree  $t$ . We define  $v_n$  to be its cumulated value  $\sum_{|t|=n} v[t]$  among all trees of size  $n$ , and  $v(z)$  to be the OGF  $\sum_{n \geq 0} v_n z^n$ . The recursive decomposition of  $\mathcal{B}$  leads directly to the following fundamental relations:

THEOREM 1. *The sum and recursive product valuation functions are admissible for the class  $\mathcal{B}$  of binary trees:*

$$\begin{aligned} v[t] &= u[t] + w[t] && \implies && v(z) &= u(z) + w(z); \\ v[t] &= u[t_{\text{left}}] \cdot w[t_{\text{right}}] && \implies && v(z) &= z \cdot u(z) \cdot w(z), \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_{\text{left}}$  and  $t_{\text{right}}$  denote the left and right subtrees of  $t$ .

The proof is similar to that of Theorem 1.1. The importance of Theorem 1 is due to the fact that it provides an automatic translation from VF to OGF, for many VFs of interest.

EXAMPLES. 1. Enumeration. The standard trick we shall use throughout this section for counting the number of trees of size  $n$  in a certain class is to use the unit VF  $I[t] \equiv 1$ . For example, let  $B_n$ , for  $n \geq 0$ , be the number of binary trees with  $n$  internal nodes. By our definitions above,  $B_n$  is simply equal to  $I_n$ , and thus the OGF  $B(z)$  is equal to  $I(z)$ . We can solve for  $B(z)$  via Theorem 1 if we use the following recursive definition of  $I[t]$ ,

$$I[t] = \delta_{|t|=0} + I[t_{\text{left}}] \cdot I[t_{\text{right}}], \tag{2a}$$

which is a composition of the two types of VF expressions handled by Theorem 1. Here  $\delta_R$  denotes 1 if relation  $R$  is true, and 0 otherwise. Since  $B_0 = 1$ , the OGF for  $\delta_{|t|=0}$  is 1. Theorem 1 translates (2a) into

$$B(z) = 1 + zB(z)^2. \tag{2b}$$

The solution  $B(z) = \frac{1}{2z}(1 - \sqrt{1 - 4z})$  follows by the quadratic formula. By expanding coefficients, we get  $B_n = \frac{1}{n+1} \binom{2n}{n}$ , as in Section 1.1.

2. Internal Path Length. The standard recursive tree traversal algorithm uses a stack to keep track of the ancestors of the current node in the traversal. The average stack size, amortized over the course of the traversal, is related to the *internal path length* of the tree, divided by  $n$ . The VF corresponding to the cumulated internal path lengths among all binary trees with  $n$  nodes can be expressed in the following form suitable for Theorem 1:

$$\begin{aligned} p[t] &= |t| - 1 + \delta_{|t|=0} + p[t_{\text{left}}] + p[t_{\text{right}}] \\ &= |t| - 1 + \delta_{|t|=0} + p[t_{\text{left}}] \cdot I[t_{\text{right}}] + I[t_{\text{left}}] \cdot p[t_{\text{right}}]. \end{aligned} \tag{3a}$$

We computed the OGFs for  $I[t] \equiv 1$  and  $\delta_{|t|=0}$  in the last example, and the OGF for the size VF  $S[t] = |t|$  is easily seen to be  $S(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} nB_n z^n = zB'(z)$ . Applying Theorem 1, we have

$$p(z) = zB'(z) - B(z) + 1 + 2z p(z)B(z),$$

which gives us

$$p(z) = \frac{zB'(z) - B(z) + 1}{1 - 2zB(z)} = \frac{1}{1 - 4z} - \frac{1}{z} \left( \frac{1 - z}{\sqrt{1 - 4z}} - 1 \right). \tag{3b}$$

We get  $p_n$  by expanding (3b). The result is given below; the asymptotics follow from Stirling's formula. ■

THEOREM 2. *The cumulated internal path length over all binary trees of  $n$  nodes is*

$$p_n = 4^n - \frac{3n+1}{n+1} \binom{2n}{n},$$

*and the expected internal path length  $p_n/B_n$  is asymptotically  $n\sqrt{\pi n} - 3n + O(\sqrt{n})$ .*

Theorem 2 implies that the time for a traversal from leaf to root in a random binary tree is  $O(\sqrt{n})$ , on the average.

In a similar derivation, Knuth [1973a] considers the bivariate OGF  $B(u, z) = \sum_{n,k \geq 0} b_{n,k} u^k z^n$ , where  $b_{n,k}$  is the number of binary trees with size  $n$  and internal path length  $k$ . It satisfies the functional equation  $B(u, z) = 1 + zB(u, uz)^2$  (cf. (2b)). The expected internal path length and the variance can be formed in the usual way in terms of the coefficients of  $z^n$  in the derivatives of  $B(u, z)$ , evaluated at  $u = 1$ .

The two examples above illustrate our general philosophy that it is useful to compute the OGFs for a standard catalogue of valuation functions, so as to handle a large variety of statistics. The most important VFs are clearly  $I[t]$  and  $S[t]$ .

Another important class of trees is the class  $\mathcal{G}$  of *plane trees* (also known as *ordered trees*). Each tree in  $\mathcal{G}$  consists of a root node and an arbitrary number of ordered subtrees. This suggests the recursive definition

$$\mathcal{G} = \{\circ\} \times \mathcal{G}^*, \quad (4)$$

where  $\circ$  represents a node, and  $\mathcal{G}^* = \{\circ\} \times \sum_{k \geq 0} \mathcal{G}^k$  is the sequence class of  $\mathcal{G}$ , defined in Section 1.2. The size of a tree is defined to be the number of its nodes. An interesting subclass of  $\mathcal{G}$  is the class  $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{T}^\Omega$  of plane trees in which the degrees of the nodes are constrained to be in some subset  $\Omega$  of the nonnegative integers. We require that  $0 \in \Omega$  or else the trees will be infinite. The class  $\mathcal{G}$  is the special case of  $\mathcal{T}^\Omega$  when  $\Omega$  is the set of nonnegative integers. It is possible to mimic (4) and get the corresponding representation for  $\mathcal{T}$

$$\mathcal{T} = \{\circ\} \times \sum_{k \in \Omega} \mathcal{T}^k, \quad (5)$$

but we shall see that it is just as simple to deal directly with (4) by using the appropriate VF to restrict the degrees. There are two important correspondences between  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathcal{G}$ , and  $\mathcal{T}^{\{0,2\}}$ :

1. The set of binary trees of size  $n$  is isomorphic to the set of plane trees of size  $n+1$ . A standard technique in data structures illustrates the correspondence: We represent a general tree of  $n+1$  nodes as a binary tree with no right subtree and with a binary tree of  $n$  internal nodes as its left subtree; the left link denotes “first child” and the right link denotes “next sibling.”
2. If we think of the bottommost nodes of trees in  $\mathcal{T}^{\{0,2\}}$  as “external nodes,” we get a 1–1 correspondence between binary trees of size  $n$  and plane trees with degree constraint  $\{0, 2\}$  of size  $2n+1$ .

Theorem 1 generalizes in a straightforward manner for  $\mathcal{G}$ :

THEOREM 3. *The sum and recursive product valuation functions are admissible for the class  $\mathcal{G}$  of plane trees:*

$$\begin{aligned} v[t] = u[t] + w[t] &\implies v(z) = u(z) + w(z); \\ v[t] = \delta_{\deg t \in \Omega} \prod_{1 \leq i \leq \deg t} u_{i, \deg t}[t_i] &\implies v(z) = z \sum_{k \in \Omega} \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} u_{i, k}(z), \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_{\deg t}$  represent the subtrees attached to the root of  $t$ .

EXAMPLES. Enumerations. 1. The number  $G_n$  of plane trees with  $n$  nodes is obtained via the unit VF  $I[t] \equiv 1 = \prod_{0 \leq i \leq \deg t} I[t_i]$ . (Plane trees are always non-empty, so  $|t| \geq 1$ .) By Theorem 3, we get  $G(z) = \bar{I}(z) = z \sum_{k \geq 0} I(z)^k = z/(1 - I(z))$ . This implies  $G(z) = I(z) = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \sqrt{1 - 4z}) = zB(z)$ , and thus we have  $G_{n+1} = B_n$ , which illustrates correspondence 1 mentioned above.

2. For the number  $T_n$  of trees of size  $n$  with degree constraint  $\Omega$ , we apply to  $\mathcal{G}$  the constrained unit VF  $I^\Omega[t] = \delta_{t \in \mathcal{T}} = \delta_{\deg t \in \Omega} \prod_{0 \leq i \leq \deg t} I^\Omega[t_i]$ . For the special case  $\Omega = \{0, 2\}$ , Theorem 3 gives us  $T(z) = I^\Omega(z) = z + zI^\Omega(z)^2$ . The solution to this quadratic equation is  $T(z) = I^\Omega(z) = \frac{1}{2z}(1 - \sqrt{1 - 4z^2}) = zB(z^2)$ , and thus we have  $T_{2n+1} = B_n$ , illustrating correspondence 2.

3. For  $d \geq 2$ , let us define the class  $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}_d$  of  $d$ -ary trees to be  $\mathcal{D} = \{\blacksquare\} + (\{\circ\} \times \mathcal{D}^d)$ . Binary trees are the special case  $d = 2$ . The number  $D_n$  of  $d$ -ary trees can be obtained by generalizing our derivation of  $B_n$  at the beginning of this section. The derivation we present, though, comes from generalizing correspondence 2 and staying within the framework of plane trees: Each  $d$ -ary tree corresponds to a plane tree of  $dn + 1$  nodes with degree constraint  $\Omega = \{0, d\}$ . The same derivation used in the preceding example gives  $T(z) = I(z) = z + zI(z)^d$ . By Lagrange-Bürmann inversion, with  $f(z) = T(z)$ ,  $\varphi(u) = 1 + u^d$ , we get

$$D_n = T_{dn+1} = [z^{dn+1}] T(z) = \frac{1}{dn+1} [u^{dn}] ((1 + u^d)^{dn+1}) = \frac{1}{dn+1} \binom{dn+1}{n}. \quad \blacksquare$$

In each of the examples above, the functional equation involving the OGF was simple enough so that either the OGF could be solved in explicit closed form or else the Lagrange-Bürmann inversion theorem could be applied easily (that is, the coefficients of powers of  $\varphi(u)$  were easy to determine). More advanced asymptotic methods are needed, for example, to determine the number  $T_n$  of plane trees with arbitrary degree constraint  $\Omega$ . Let us assume for simplicity that  $\Omega$  is *aperiodic*, that is,  $\Omega$  consists of 0 and any sequence of positive integers with a greatest common divisor of 1.

To count  $T_n$ , we start out as in the second example above. By applying Theorem 3, we get

$$T(z) = z \omega(T(z)), \tag{6}$$

where  $\omega(u) = \sum_{k \in \Omega} u^k$ . Lagrange-Bürmann inversion is of little help when  $\omega(u)$  has several terms, so we take another approach. The singularities of  $T(z)$  are of an algebraic nature. We know from Section 2.2 that the asymptotic behavior of the coefficients  $T_n$  are

related to the dominant singularities of  $T(z)$ , that is, the ones with smallest modulus. To find the singularities of  $T(z)$ , let us regard  $T(z)$  as the solution  $y$  of the equation

$$F(z, y) = 0, \quad \text{where } F(z, y) = y - z\omega(y). \quad (7)$$

The function  $y = T(z)$  is defined implicitly as a function of  $z$ . By the Implicit Function Theorem, the solution  $y$  with  $y(z_0) = y_0$  is analytically continuable at  $z_0$  if  $F_y(z_0, y_0) \neq 0$ , where  $F_y(z, y)$  denotes the partial derivative with respect to  $y$ . Hence, the singularities of  $y$  (the values of  $z$  where  $y$  is not analytic) are the values  $\rho$  where

$$F(\rho, \tau) = \tau - \rho\omega(\tau) = 0, \quad F_y(\rho, \tau) = 1 - \rho\omega'(\tau) = 0. \quad (8)$$

This gives  $\rho = \tau/\omega(\tau) = 1/\omega'(\tau)$ , where  $\tau$  is a root of the equation

$$\omega(\tau) - \tau\omega'(\tau) = 0. \quad (9)$$

We denote the dominant singularity of  $T(z)$  on the positive real line by  $\rho^*$ , and we let  $\tau^*$  be the (unique) corresponding value of  $\tau$  from (9). Since  $T(\rho^*) = \tau^*$ , it follows that  $\tau^*$  is real. If  $\Omega$  is aperiodic, then by examining the power series equation corresponding to (9), we see that  $\tau^*$  is the unique real solution to (9), and any other solution  $\tau$  must have larger modulus.

Around the point  $(\rho^*, \tau^*)$ , the dependence between  $y$  and  $z$  is locally of the form

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = F(z, y) &= F_z(\rho^*, \tau^*)(z - \rho^*) + 0 \cdot (y - \tau^*) + \frac{1}{2}F_{yy}(\rho^*, \tau^*)(y - \tau^*)^2 \\ &\quad + \text{smaller order terms.} \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

By iteration and bounding the coefficients, we can show that  $y(z)$  has the form

$$y(z) = f(z) + g(z)\sqrt{1 - \frac{z}{\rho^*}}, \quad (11a)$$

where  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are analytic at  $z = \rho^*$ , and  $g(\rho^*) = -\sqrt{2\omega(\tau^*)/\omega''(\tau^*)}$ . Hence, we have

$$y(z) = f(z) + g(\rho^*)\sqrt{1 - \frac{z}{\rho^*}} + O\left(\left(1 - \frac{z}{\rho^*}\right)^{3/2}\right). \quad (11b)$$

Theorem 2.2 shows that the contribution of  $f(z)$  to  $T_n$  is insignificant. By applying the transfer lemma (Theorem 2.3), we get our final result:

**THEOREM 4** [Meir and Moon 1978]. *If  $\Omega$  is aperiodic, we have*

$$T_n \sim c\rho^{-n}n^{-3/2},$$

where the constants  $c$  and  $\rho$  are given by  $c = \sqrt{\omega(\tau)/(2\pi\omega''(\tau))}$  and  $0 < \rho = \tau/\omega(\tau) < 1$ , and  $\tau$  is the smallest positive root of the equation  $\omega(\tau) - \tau\omega'(\tau) = 0$ .

For brevity, we expanded only the first terms of  $y(z)$  in (11b), but we could easily have expanded  $y(z)$  further to get the full asymptotic expansion of  $T_n$ . In the periodic case, which is also considered in [Meir and Moon 1978], the generating function  $T(z)$  has more than one dominant singularity, and the contributions of these dominant singularities must be added together.

In the rest of this section we show how several other parameters of trees can be analyzed by making partial use of this approach. The asymptotics are often determined via the techniques described in Sections 2.2–2.4.

**Height of Plane Trees.** For example, let us consider the expected maximum stack size during a recursive tree traversal. (We earlier considered the expected stack size amortized over the course of the traversal.) The maximum stack size is simply the height of the tree, namely, the length of the longest path from the root to a node.

**THEOREM 5** [De Bruijn, Knuth, and Rice 1972]. *The expected height  $\overline{H}_n$  of a plane tree with  $n$  nodes, where each tree in  $\mathcal{G}$  is equally likely, is  $\overline{H}_n = \sqrt{\pi n} + O(1)$ .*

**PROOF SKETCH.** The number  $G_n^{[h]}$  of plane trees with height  $\leq h$  corresponds to using the 0–1 VF  $G^{[h]}$ , which is defined to be 1 if the height of  $t$  is  $\leq h$ , and 0 otherwise. It has a recursive formulation

$$G^{[h+1]}[t] = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq \deg t} G^{[h]}[t_i], \tag{12a}$$

which is in the right form to apply Theorem 3. From it we get

$$G^{[h+1]}(z) = \sum_{k \geq 0} z \left( G^{[h]}(z) \right)^k = \frac{z}{1 - G^{[h]}(z)}, \tag{12b}$$

where  $G^{[0]}(z) = z$ . Note the similarity to the generating function for plane trees, which satisfies  $G(z) = z/(1 - G(z))$ . It is easy to transform (12b) into

$$G^{[h+1]}(z) = z \frac{F_h(z)}{F_{h+1}(z)}, \quad \text{where } F_{h+2}(z) = F_{h+1}(z) - zF_h(z). \tag{13}$$

The polynomials  $F_h(z)$  are Chebyshev polynomials. From the linear recurrence that  $F_h(z)$  satisfies, we can express  $F_h(z)$  as a rational function of  $G^{[h]}(z)$ . Then applying Lagrange-Bürmann inversion, we get the following expression:

$$G_{n+1} - G_{n+1}^{[h]} = \sum_{j \geq 0} \left( \binom{2n}{n+1-j(h+2)} - 2 \binom{2n}{n-j(h+2)} + \binom{2n}{n-1-j(h+2)} \right). \tag{14}$$

The expected tree height  $\overline{H}_{n+1}$  is given by

$$\overline{H}_{n+1} = \frac{1}{G_{n+1}} \sum_{h \geq 1} h \left( G_{n+1}^{[h]} - G_{n+1}^{[h-1]} \right) = \frac{1}{G_{n+1}} \sum_{h \geq 0} \left( G_{n+1} - G_{n+1}^{[h]} \right). \tag{15}$$

By substituting (14), we see that the evaluation of (15) is related to sums of the form

$$S_n = \sum_{k \geq 0} d(k) \binom{2n}{n-k} / \binom{2n}{n}, \tag{16}$$

where  $d(k)$  is the number of divisors of  $k$ . By Stirling’s approximation, we can approximate  $S_n$  by  $T(1/\sqrt{n})$ , where

$$T(x) = \sum_{k \geq 1} d(k) e^{-k^2 x^2}. \tag{17}$$

The problem is thus to evaluate  $T(x)$  asymptotically as  $x \rightarrow 0$ . This is one of the expansions we did in Section 2.4 using Mellin transforms, where we found that

$$T(x) \sim -\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} \frac{\log x}{x} + \left( \frac{3\gamma}{4} - \frac{\log 2}{2} \right) \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{x} + \frac{1}{4} + O(x^m), \tag{18}$$

for any  $m > 0$ , as  $x \rightarrow 0$ . The theorem follows from the appropriate combination of terms of the form (18). ■

**THEOREM 6** [Flajolet and Odlyzko 1982]. *The expected height  $\overline{H}_n$  of a plane tree with degree constraint  $\Omega$ , where  $\Omega$  is aperiodic and each tree in  $\mathcal{T}$  is equally likely, is  $\sim \lambda\sqrt{n}$ , where  $\lambda$  is a constant that depends upon  $\Omega$ .*

**PROOF SKETCH.** By analogy with (12), we use the VF  $T^{[h]}[t] = \delta_{\text{height } t \leq h}$ . This VF can be expressed recursively as

$$T^{[h+1]}[t] = \delta_{\text{deg } t \in \Omega} \prod_{1 \leq i \leq \text{deg } t} T^{[h]}[t_i]. \tag{19a}$$

Theorem 3 gives us

$$T^{[h+1]}(z) = z \omega(T^{[h]}(z)), \tag{19b}$$

where  $T^{[0]}(z) = z$  and  $\omega(u) = \sum_{k \in \Omega} u^k$ . The generating function  $H(z)$  of the cumulated height of trees is equal to

$$H(z) = \sum_{h \geq 0} \left( T(z) - T^{[h]}(z) \right). \tag{20}$$

One way to regard (19b) is simply as the iterative approximation scheme to the fixed point equation (6) that determines  $T(z)$ . A delicate singularity analysis leads to the result. To do the analysis, we need to examine the behavior of the iterative scheme near the singularity  $z = \rho$ , which is an example of a *singular iteration problem*. We find in the neighborhood of  $z = \rho$  that

$$H(z) \sim \frac{d}{1 - z/\rho} \log \frac{1}{1 - z/\rho},$$

where  $d$  is the appropriate constant. The theorem follows directly. ■

Methods similar to those used in the proof of this theorem had been used by Odlyzko to prove the following:

**THEOREM 7** [Odlyzko 1982]. *The number  $E_n$  of balanced 2–3 plane trees with  $n$  “external” nodes is  $\sim \frac{1}{n} \phi^n W(\log n)$ , where  $\phi$  is the golden ratio  $(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$ , and  $W(x)$  is a continuous and periodic function.*

This result actually extends to several families of balanced trees, which are used as search structures with guaranteed  $O(\log n)$  access time. The occurrence of the golden ratio in Theorem 7 is not surprising, given our discussion in Section 2.2 of the equation  $f(z) = z + f(z^2 + z^3)$ , which is satisfied by the OGF of  $E_n$ .

**Pattern Matching.** Another important class of algorithms on trees deals with *pattern matching*, the problem of detecting all occurrences of a given pattern tree inside a larger text tree, which occurs often in symbolic manipulation systems. Unlike the simpler case of string matching, where linear-time worst-case algorithms are known, it is conjectured that no linear-time algorithm exists for tree pattern matching.

The following straightforward algorithm, called *sequential matching*, has quadratic running time in the worst case, but can be shown to run in linear time on the average. For each node of the tree, we compare the subtree rooted at that node with the pattern tree by doing simultaneous preorder traversals. Whenever a mismatch is found, the preorder traversal is aborted, and the next node in the tree is considered. If a preorder traversal successfully finishes, then a match is found.

**THEOREM 8** [Steyaert and Flajolet 1983]. *The expected running time of the sequential matching algorithm, when applied to a fixed pattern  $P$  and all trees in  $\mathcal{T}$  of size  $n$ , is  $\sim cn$ , where  $c$  is a function of the degree constraint  $\Omega$  and the structure of pattern  $P$  and is uniformly bounded by an absolute constant, for all  $P$ .*

**PROOF SKETCH.** The proof depends upon a lemma that the probability that  $P$  occurs at a random node in the tree is asymptotically  $\tau^{e-1}\rho^i$ , where  $i$  and  $e$  are the numbers of internal and external nodes in  $P$ . The algebraic part of the proof of the lemma is a direct application of the method of Theorems 1 and 3 applied to multisets of trees. Generating functions for the number of pattern matches have simple expressions in terms of  $T(z)$ ; a singularity analysis finishes the proof. ■

The same type of analysis can be applied to a large variety of tree algorithms in a semi-automatic way. One illustration is the following:

**THEOREM 9** [Flajolet and Steyaert 1987]. *For any set  $\Theta$  of operators and  $\Delta$  of differentiation rules with at least one “expanding rule,” the average-case complexity of the symbolic differentiation algorithm is asymptotically  $cn^{3/2} + O(n)$ , where the constant  $c$  depends upon  $\Theta$  and  $\Delta$ .*

**Tree Compaction.** A different kind of singular behavior occurs in the problem known as *common subexpression elimination* or *tree compaction*, where a tree is compacted into a directed acyclic graph by avoiding duplication of identical substructures. This has applications to the compaction of Lisp programs and to code optimization.

**THEOREM 10** [Flajolet, Sipala, and Steyaert 1987]. *The expected size of the maximally compacted dag representation of a random tree in  $\mathcal{T}$  of size  $n$  is  $cn/\sqrt{\log n} + O(n/\log n)$ , where the constant  $c$  depends upon  $\Omega$ .*

The dominant singularity in this case is of the form  $1/\sqrt{(1-z)\log(1-z)^{-1}}$ . The theorem shows that the space savings to be expected when compacting trees approaches 100 percent as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , though convergence is slow.

**Register Allocation.** The *register allocation* problem consists of finding an optimal strategy for evaluating expressions that can be represented by a tree. The optimal pebbling strategy, due to Ershov, requires only  $O(\log n)$  registers to evaluate a tree of size  $n$ . The following theorem determines the coefficient in the average case for evaluating expressions involving binary operators:

**THEOREM 11** [Flajolet, Raoult, and Vuillemin 1979], [Kemp 1979]. *The expected optimum number of registers to evaluate a random binary tree of size  $n$  is  $\log_4 n + P(\log_4 n) + o(1)$ , where  $P(x)$  is a periodic function with period 1 and small amplitude.*

**PROOF SKETCH.** The analysis involves the combinatorial sum

$$V_n = \sum_{k \geq 1} v_2(k) \binom{2n}{n-k},$$

where  $v_2(k)$  is the number of 2s in the decomposition of  $n$  into prime factors. If we normalize and approximate the binomial coefficient by an exponential term, as in (17), we

can compute the approximation's Mellin transform

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{\zeta(s)}{2^s - 1}, \left(\frac{1}{2}\right).$$

The set of regularly-spaced poles  $s = 2k\pi i / \log 2$  corresponds to periodic fluctuations in the form of a Fourier series. ■

## 4.2. Binary Search Trees

We denote by  $\mathcal{BST}(S)$  the *binary search tree* formed by inserting a sequence  $S$  of elements. It has the recursive decomposition

$$\mathcal{BST}(S) = \begin{cases} \langle \mathcal{BST}(S_{\leq}), s_1, \mathcal{BST}(S_{>}) \rangle, & \text{if } |S| \geq 1; \\ \langle \blacksquare \rangle, & \text{if } |S| = 0, \end{cases} \quad (21)$$

where  $s_1$  is the first element in  $S$ ,  $S_{\leq}$  is the subsequence of the other elements that are  $\leq s_1$ , and  $S_{>}$  is the subsequence of elements  $> s_1$ . An empty binary search tree is represented by the external node ■.

The search for an element  $x$  proceeds as follows, starting with the root  $s_1$  as the current node  $y$ : We compare  $x$  with  $y$ , and if  $x < y$  we set  $y$  to be the left child of  $y$ , and if  $x > y$  we set  $y$  to be the right child of  $y$ . The process is repeated until either  $x = y$  (successful search) or else an external node is reached (unsuccessful search). (Note that this process finds only the *first* element with value  $x$ . If the elements' values are all distinct, this is no problem; otherwise, the left path should be searched until a leaf or an element of smaller value is reached.) Insertion is done by inserting the new element into the tree at the point where the unsuccessful search ended. The importance of binary search trees to sorting and range queries is that a linear-time inorder traversal will output the elements in sorted order.

Well-known data structures, such as 2-3 trees, AVL trees, red-black trees, and self-adjusting search trees, do some extra work to ensure that the insert, delete, and query operations can be done in  $O(\log n)$  time, where  $n$  is the size of the tree. (In the first three cases, the times are logarithmic in the worst case, and in the latter case they are logarithmic in the amortized sense.) Balanced trees are discussed further in [Mehlhorn and Tsakalidis 1989].

In this section we show that the same logarithmic bounds hold in the average case without need for any balancing overhead. Our probability model assumes that the sequence  $S$  of  $n$  elements  $s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n$  is picked by random sampling from a real interval, or equivalently, as far as relative ordering is concerned, the elements form a random permutation of size  $n$ . The dynamic version of the problem, which corresponds to an average-case amortized analysis, appears in Section 6.

We define  $\mathcal{BST}$  to be the class of all binary search trees corresponding to permutations,  $\mathcal{BST} = \{\mathcal{BST}(\sigma) \mid \sigma \in S_n\}$ . We use  $K$  to denote the random variable describing the size

of the left subtree; that is,  $|S_{\leq}| = K$  and  $|S_{>}| = n - 1 - K$ . By our probability model, the splitting probabilities become

$$\Pr\{K = k\} = \frac{1}{n}, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq k \leq n - 1. \quad (22)$$

One consequence of this is that not all trees in  $\mathcal{BST}$  are equally likely to occur. For example, the perfectly balanced tree of three nodes (which occurs for  $\sigma = 213$  and  $\sigma = 231$ ) is twice as likely to occur as the tree for  $\sigma = 123$ .

The powerful valuation function method that we introduced in the last section applies equally well to binary search trees. In this case, however, the nature of recurrence (21) suggests that we use EGFs of cumulative values (or equivalently OGFs of expected values). For VF  $v[t]$ , we let  $v_n$  be its expected value for trees of size  $n$ , and we define  $v(z)$  to be the OGF  $\sum_{n \geq 0} v_n z^n$ .

**THEOREM 12.** *The sum and subtree product valuation functions are admissible for the class  $\mathcal{BST}$  of binary search trees:*

$$\begin{aligned} v[t] = u[t] + w[t] &\implies v(z) = u(z) + w(z); \\ v[t] = u[t_{\leq}] \cdot w[t_{>}] &\implies v(z) = \int_0^z u(t)w(t) dt, \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_{\leq}$  and  $t_{>}$  denote the left and right subtrees of  $t$ .

The subtree product VF typically results in an integral equation over the OGFs, which by differentiation can be put into the form of a differential equation. This differs from the equations that resulted from Theorems 1 and 3, which we used in the last section for binary and plane trees.

A good illustration of these techniques is to compute the expected number of probes  $\overline{C}_n$  per successful search on a random binary search tree of size  $n$ . We assume that each of the  $n$  elements is equally likely to be the object of the search. It is easy to see that  $\overline{C}_n$  is equal to the expected internal path length  $p_n$ , divided by  $n$ , plus 1, so it suffices to compute  $p_n$ . The recursive definition of the corresponding VF  $p[t]$  is

$$\begin{aligned} p[t] &= |t| - 1 + \delta_{|t|=0} + p[t_{\leq}] + p[t_{>}] \\ &= |t| - 1 + \delta_{|t|=0} + p[t_{\leq}] \cdot I[t_{>}] + I[t_{\leq}] \cdot p[t_{>}], \end{aligned} \quad (23a)$$

where  $I[t] \equiv 1$  is the unit VF, whose OGF is  $I(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = 1/(1 - z)$ . The size VF  $S[t] = |t|$  has OGF  $\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n = z/(1 - z)^2$ . Theorem 12 translates (23a) into

$$p(z) = \frac{z^2}{(1 - z)^2} + 2 \int_0^z \frac{p(t)}{1 - t} dt. \quad (23b)$$

Differentiating (23b), we get a linear first-order differential equation

$$p'(z) - \frac{2p(z)}{1 - z} - \frac{2z}{(1 - z)^3} = 0, \quad (23c)$$

which can be solved using the variation-of-parameter method (1.20) to get

$$p(z) = -2 \frac{\log(1 - z) + z}{(1 - z)^2} = 2H'(z) - \frac{2(1 + z)}{(1 - z)^2},$$

where  $H(z) = -\log(1 - z)/(1 - z)$  is the OGF of the Harmonic numbers. The following theorem results by extracting  $[z^n]p(z)$ :

**THEOREM 13.** *The expected internal path length of a random binary search tree with  $n$  internal nodes is*

$$p_n = 2(n+1)H_n - 4n \sim 2n \log n + (2\gamma - 4)n + O(\log n).$$

Theorem 13 shows that the average search time in a random binary search tree is about 39 percent longer than in a perfectly balanced binary search tree.

There is also a short *ad hoc* derivation of  $p_n$ : In a random binary search tree,  $s_i$  is an ancestor of  $s_j$  when  $s_i$  is the first element of  $\{s_{\min\{i,j\}}, s_{\min\{i,j\}+1}, \dots, s_{\max\{i,j\}}\}$  inserted into the tree, which happens with probability  $1/(|i-j|+1)$ . Thus we have  $p_n = \sum_{1 \leq i, j \leq n} 1/(|i-j|+1)$ , which readily yields the desired formula.

The expected internal path length  $p_n$  has direct application to other statistics of interest. For example,  $p_n$  is the expected number of comparisons used to sort a sequence of  $n$  elements by building a binary search tree and then performing an inorder traversal. The expected number  $\overline{U}_n$  of probes per unsuccessful search (which is also the average number of probes per insertion, since insertions are preceded by an unsuccessful search) is the average *external path length*  $\overline{EP}_n$ , divided by  $n+1$ . The well-known correspondence

$$EP_n = IP_n + 2n \tag{24a}$$

between the external path length  $EP_n$  and the internal path length  $IP_n$  of a binary tree with  $n$  internal nodes leads to

$$\overline{U}_n = \frac{n}{n+1}(\overline{C}_n + 1), \tag{24b}$$

which readily yields an expression for  $\overline{U}_n$  via Theorem 13. We can also derive  $\overline{U}_n$  directly as we did for  $\overline{C}_n$  or via the use of PGFs. Yet another alternative is an *ad hoc* proof that combines (24b) with a different linear relation between  $\overline{U}_n$  and  $\overline{C}_n$ , namely,

$$\overline{C}_n = 1 + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq n-1} \overline{U}_i. \tag{25}$$

Eq. (25) follows from the observation that the  $n$  possible successful searches on a tree of size  $n$  retrace the steps taken during the  $n$  unsuccessful searches that were done when the elements were originally inserted.

**Quicksort.** We can apply our valuation function machinery to the analysis of quicksort, as mentioned in Section 3.5. Let  $q_n$  be the average number of comparisons used by quicksort to sort  $n$  elements. Quicksort works by choosing a partitioning element  $s$  (say, the first element), dividing the file into the part  $\leq s$  and the part  $> s$ , and recursively sorting each subfile. The process is remarkably similar to the recursive decomposition of binary search trees. The version of quicksort in [Knuth 1973b] and [Sedgewick 1977b] uses  $n+1$  comparisons to split the file into two parts. (Only  $n-1$  comparisons are needed, but the extra two comparisons help speed up the rest of the algorithm in actual implementations.) The initial conditions are  $q_0 = q_1 = 0$ . The corresponding VF  $q[t]$  is

$$\begin{aligned} q[t] &= |t| + 1 - \delta_{|t|=0} - 2\delta_{|t|=1} + q[t_{\leq}] + q[t_{>}] \\ &= |t| + 1 - \delta_{|t|=0} - 2\delta_{|t|=1} + q[t_{\leq}] \cdot I[t_{>}] + I[t_{\leq}] \cdot q[t_{>}] \end{aligned} \tag{26a}$$

As before, the OGFs for  $I[t] \equiv 1$  and  $S[t] = |t|$  are  $1/(1-z)$  and  $z/(1-z)^2$ . By the translation of Theorem 12, we get

$$q(z) = \frac{z}{(1-z)^2} + \frac{1}{1-z} - 1 - 2z + 2 \int_0^z \frac{q(t)}{1-t} dt; \quad (26b)$$

$$q'(z) = \frac{2}{(1-z)^3} - 2 + \frac{2q(z)}{1-z}. \quad (26c)$$

The linear differential equation (26c) can be solved via the variation-of-parameter method to get

$$q(z) = -2 \frac{\log(1-z)}{(1-z)^2} - \frac{2}{3(1-z)^2} + \frac{2}{3}(1-z) = 2H'(z) - \frac{8}{3(1-z)^2} + \frac{2}{3}(1-z). \quad (27a)$$

We can then extract  $q_n = [z^n]q(z)$  to get

$$q_n = 2(n+1) \left( H_{n+1} - \frac{4}{3} \right) \sim 2n \log n + 2n \left( \gamma - \frac{4}{3} \right) + O(\log n). \quad (27b)$$

In practice, quicksort can be optimized by stopping the recursion when the size of the subfile is  $\leq m$ , for some parameter  $m$ . When the algorithm terminates, a final insertion sort is done on the file. (We know from Section 3.2 that insertion sort is very efficient when the number of inversions is small.) The analysis of quicksort can be modified to give the average running time as a function of  $n$  and  $m$ . The optimum  $m$  can then be determined, as a function of  $n$ . This is done in [Knuth 1973b] and [Sedgewick 1977], where it is shown that  $m = 9$  is optimum in typical implementations once  $n$  gets large enough. The average number of comparisons can be derived using the truncated VF

$$q_m[t] = \delta_{|t|>m}(|t|+1) + q_m[t_{\leq}] \cdot I[t_{>}] + I[t_{\leq}] \cdot q_m[t_{>}] \quad (28)$$

(cf. (26a)). The truncated unit VF  $I_m[t] = \delta_{|t|>m}$  and the truncated size VF  $S_m[t] = \delta_{|t|>m}|t|$  have the OGFs  $\sum_{n>m} z^n = z^{m+1}/(1-z)$  and  $\sum_{n>m} nz^n = ((m+1)z^{m+1} - mz^{m+2})/(1-z)^2$ , respectively. The rest of the derivation proceeds as before (and should be done with a symbolic algebra system); the result (cf. (27b)) is

$$q_{m,n} = 2(n+1) \left( H_{n+1} - H_{m+2} + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (29)$$

**Height of Binary Search Trees.** The analysis of the height of binary search trees involves interesting equations over generating functions. By analogy with (12), let  $G_n^{[h]}$  denote the probability that a random binary search tree of size  $n$  has height  $\leq h$ . The corresponding VF  $G^{[h]}[t] = \delta_{\text{height } t \leq h}$  is of the form

$$G^{[h+1]}[t] = \delta_{|t|=0} + G^{[h]}[t_{\leq}] \cdot G^{[h]}[t_{>}]. \quad (30a)$$

Theorem 12 translates this into

$$G^{[h+1]}(z) = 1 + \int_0^z \left( G^{[h]}(t) \right)^2 dt, \quad (30b)$$

where  $G^{[0]}(z) = 1$  and  $G(z) = G^{[\infty]}(z) = 1/(1 - z)$ . The sequence  $\{G^{[h]}(z)\}_{h \geq 0}$  forms a sequence of Picard approximants to  $G(z)$ . The OGF for the expected height is

$$H(z) = \sum_{h \geq 0} \left( G(z) - G^{[h]}(z) \right). \tag{31}$$

It is natural to conjecture that  $H(z)$  has the singular expansion

$$H(z) \sim \frac{c}{1 - z} \log \frac{1}{1 - z}, \tag{32}$$

as  $z \rightarrow 1$ , for some constant  $c$ , but no one has succeeded so far in establishing it directly. Devroye [1986a] has determined the asymptotic form of  $H_n$  using the theory of branching processes:

**THEOREM 14** [Devroye 1986a]. *The expected height  $H_n$  of a binary search tree of size  $n$  is  $\sim c \log n$ , where  $c = 4.311070 \dots$  is the root  $\geq 2$  of the equation  $(2e/c)^c = e$ .*

Theorems 13 and 14 point out clearly that a random binary search tree is fairly balanced, in contrast to the random binary trees  $\mathcal{B}$  we studied in Section 4.1. The expected height and path lengths of binary search trees are  $O(\log n)$  and  $O(n \log n)$ , whereas by Theorem 2 the corresponding quantities for binary trees are  $O(\sqrt{n})$  and  $O(n\sqrt{n})$ .

Interesting problems in average-case analysis also arise in connection with balanced search trees, but interest is usually focused on storage space rather than running time. For example, a fringe analysis is used in [Yao 1978] and [Brown 1979] to derive upper and lower bounds on the expected storage utilization and number of balanced nodes in random 2-3 trees and  $B$ -trees. These techniques can be extended to get better bounds, but the computations become prohibitive.

**Multidimensional Search Trees.** The binary search tree structure can be generalized in various ways to two dimensions. The most obvious generalization, called *quad trees*, uses internal nodes of degree 4. The quad tree for a sequence  $S = s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n$  of  $n$  inserted elements is defined by

$$\mathcal{Q}(S) = \begin{cases} \langle s_1, \mathcal{Q}(S_{>, >}), \mathcal{Q}(S_{\le;, >}), \mathcal{Q}(S_{\le;, \le;}), \mathcal{Q}(S_{>, \le;}) \rangle, & \text{if } |S| \geq 1; \\ \langle \blacksquare \rangle, & \text{if } |S| = 0. \end{cases} \tag{33}$$

Here each element  $s$  in  $S$  is a two-dimensional number, and the four quadrants determined by  $s$  are denoted  $S_{>, >}$ ,  $S_{\le;, >}$ ,  $S_{\le;, \le;}$ , and  $S_{>, \le;}$ . Quad trees support general range searching, and in particular partially specified queries of the form “Find all elements  $s = (s_x, s_y)$  with  $s_x = c$ .” The search proceeds recursively to all subtrees whose range overlaps the query range.

**THEOREM 15** [Flajolet et al 1989]. *The expected number of comparisons  $\overline{C}_n$  for a partially specified query in a quad tree of size  $n$  is  $bn^{(\sqrt{17}-3)/2} + O(1)$ , where  $b$  is a positive real number.*

**PROOF SKETCH.** The splitting probabilities for quad trees are not in as simple a form as in (22), but they can be determined readily. By use of the appropriate VF  $c[t]$ , we get

$$c_n = 1 + \frac{4}{n(n+1)} \sum_{0 \leq \ell \leq n-1} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq \ell} c_k. \tag{34a}$$

In terms of the OGF  $d(z) = zc(z)$ , this becomes a second-order differential equation

$$d''(z) - \frac{4}{z(1-z)^2}d(z) = \frac{2}{(1-z)^3}. \quad (34b)$$

It is not clear how to solve explicitly for  $d(z)$ , but we can get asymptotic estimates for  $d_n$  based upon the fact that  $d(z) \sim a(1-z)^{-\alpha}$ , as  $z \rightarrow 1$ , for some positive real  $a$  and  $\alpha$ . We cannot determine  $a$  in closed form in general for this type of problem, but  $\alpha$  can be determined by substituting  $a(1-z)^{-\alpha}$  into (34b) to get the “indicial equation”

$$\alpha(\alpha + 1) - 4 = 0, \quad (35)$$

whose positive solution is  $\alpha = (\sqrt{17} - 1)/2$ . The transfer lemma (Theorem 2.3) gives us our final result. ■

Quad trees can be generalized to  $k$  dimensions,  $k \geq 2$ , but the degrees of the nodes become  $2^k$ , which is too large to be practical. A better alternative, called  $k$ - $d$  trees, is a binary search tree in which the splitting at each node on level  $i$ ,  $i \geq 0$ , is based upon ordinate  $i \bmod k + 1$  of the element stored there.

**THEOREM 16** [Flajolet and Puech 1986]. *The expected number of elementary comparisons needed for a partially specified query in a  $k$ - $d$  tree of size  $n$ , in which  $s$  of the  $k$  fields are specified, is  $\sim an^{1-s/k+\vartheta(s/k)}$ , where  $\vartheta(u)$  is the root  $\vartheta \in [0, 1]$  of the equation  $(\vartheta + 3 - u)^u(\vartheta + 2 - u)^{1-u} - 2 = 0$ .*

**PROOF SKETCH.** The proof proceeds by first developing a system of integral equations for the OGFs of expected costs using the appropriate VFs and applying Theorem 12. This reduces to a differential system of order  $2k - s$ . It cannot be solved explicitly in terms of standard transcendental functions, but a singularity analysis can be done to get the result, based upon a generalization of the approach for quad trees. ■

Data structures for multidimensional search and applications in computational geometry are given in [Yao 1989].

**Heap-Ordered Trees.** We conclude this section by considering *heap-ordered trees*, in which the value of the root node of each subtree is  $\leq$  the values of the other elements in the subtree. We discussed the classical array representation of a perfectly balanced heap in connection with the heapsort algorithm in Section 3.5. Heap-ordered trees provide efficient implementations of priority queues, which support the operations *insert*, *find\_min*, and *delete\_min*. Additional operations sometimes include *merge* and *decrease\_key*. Pagodas [Françon, Viennot, Vuillemin 1978] are a direct implementation of heap-ordered trees that also support the merge operation.

For the sequence  $S$  of  $n$  elements  $s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n$ , we define  $\mathcal{HOT}(S)$  to be the (canonical) heap-ordered tree formed by  $S$ . It has the recursive definition

$$\mathcal{HOT}(S) = \begin{cases} \langle \mathcal{HOT}(S_{\text{left}}), s_{\min(S)}, \mathcal{HOT}(S_{\text{right}}) \rangle, & \text{if } |S| \geq 1; \\ \langle \blacksquare \rangle, & \text{if } |S| = 0. \end{cases} \quad (36)$$

where  $\min(S)$  is the index of the rightmost smallest element in  $S$ ,  $S_{\text{left}}$  is the initial subsequence  $s_1, \dots, s_{\min(S)-1}$ , and  $S_{\text{right}}$  is the final subsequence  $s_{\min(S)+1}, \dots, s_n$ . We

assume in our probability model that  $S$  is a random permutation of  $n$  elements. Analysis of parameters of heap-ordered trees and pagodas is similar to the analysis of binary search trees, because of the following equivalence principle due to W. Burge [Burge 1972], [Vuillemin 1980]:

**THEOREM 17.** *For each pair of inverse permutations  $\sigma$  and  $\sigma^{-1}$ , we have*

$$\mathcal{BST}(\sigma) \equiv_{\text{shape}} \mathcal{HOT}(\sigma^{-1}),$$

where  $t \equiv_{\text{shape}} u$  means that the unlabeled trees associated with trees  $t$  and  $u$  are identical.

For purposes of analysis, any parameter of permutations defined inductively over the associated heap-ordered tree can thus be analyzed using the admissibility rules of Theorem 12 for binary search trees. Heap-ordered trees in the form of cartesian trees can also be used to handle a variety of 2-dimensional search problems [Vuillemin 1980].

### 4.3. Radix-Exchange Tries

*Radix-exchange tries* are binary search trees in which the elements are stored in the external nodes, and navigation through the trie at level  $i$  is based upon the  $i$ th bit of the search argument. Bit 0 means “go left,” and bit 1 means “go right.” We assume for simplicity that each element is a real number in  $[0, 1]$  of infinite precision. The trie  $\mathcal{TR}(S)$  for a set  $S$  of elements is defined recursively by

$$\mathcal{TR}(S) = \begin{cases} \langle \mathcal{TR}(S_0), \circ, \mathcal{TR}(S_1) \rangle, & \text{if } |S| > 1; \\ \langle \blacksquare \rangle, & \text{if } |S| = 1; \\ \langle \emptyset \rangle, & \text{if } |S| = 0, \end{cases} \quad (37)$$

where  $S_0$  and  $S_1$  are defined as follows: If we take the elements in  $S$  that have 0 as their first bit and then throw away that bit, we get  $S_0$ , the elements in the left subtrie. The set  $S_1$  of elements in the right subtrie is defined similarly for the elements starting with a 1 bit. The elements are stored in the external nodes of the trie. When  $S$  has a single element  $s$ , the trie consists of the external node  $\blacksquare$  with value  $s$ ; an empty trie is represented by the null external node  $\emptyset$ . The size of the trie is the number of  $\blacksquare$  external nodes.

The trie  $\mathcal{TR}(S)$  does not depend upon the order in which the elements in  $S$  are inserted; this is quite different from the case of binary search trees, where order can make a big difference upon the shape of the tree. In tries, the shape of the trie is based upon the distribution of the elements’ values.

We use the probability model that the values of the elements are independent and uniform in the real interval  $[0, 1]$ . We define the class of all tries to be  $\mathcal{TR}$ . The probability that a trie of  $n$  elements has a left subtrie of size  $k$  and a right subtrie of size  $n - k$  is the Bernoulli probability

$$p_{n,k} = \frac{1}{2^n} \binom{n}{k}. \quad (38)$$

This suggests that we use EGFs of expected values to represent trie statistics. We denote the expected value of VF  $v[t]$  among trees of size  $n$  by  $v_n$  and the EGF  $\sum_{n \geq 0} v_n z^n / n!$  by  $v(z)$ . The admissibility theorem takes yet another form:

THEOREM 18. *The sum and subtree product valuation functions are admissible for the class  $\mathcal{TR}$  of tries:*

$$\begin{aligned} v[t] = u[t] + w[t] &\implies v(z) = u(z) + w(z); \\ v[t] = u[t_0] \cdot w[t_1] &\implies v(z) = u\left(\frac{z}{2}\right) w\left(\frac{z}{2}\right), \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_0$  and  $t_1$  represent the left and right subtrees of  $t$ .

A framework for the analysis of tries via valuation functions is given in [Flajolet, Régnier, and Sotteau 1985]. In typical cases, the EGFs for the VFs that we encounter are in the form of difference equations that we can iterate.

The expected number of bit inspections per successful search in a trie with  $n$  external nodes is equal to the expected external path length  $p_n$ , divided by  $n$ . The following theorem shows that the search times are logarithmic, on the average, when no balancing is done.

THEOREM 19 [Knuth 1973b]. *The average external path length  $p_n$  of a random trie of size  $n$  is  $p_n = n \log_2 n + (\gamma / \log 2 + \frac{1}{2} + R(\log_2 n))n + O(\sqrt{n})$ , where  $R(u)$  is a periodic function of small amplitude with period 1 and mean value 0.*

PROOF. The VF corresponding to external path length is

$$p[t] = |t| - \delta_{|t|=1} + p[t_0] \cdot I[t_1] + I[t_0] \cdot p[t_1]. \quad (39a)$$

The unit VF  $I[t] \equiv 1$  has EGF  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n / n! = e^z$ , and the size VF  $S[t] = |t|$  has EGF  $\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n / n! = z e^z$ . By Theorem 18, (39a) translates to

$$p(z) = z e^z - z + 2e^{z/2} p\left(\frac{z}{2}\right). \quad (39b)$$

By iterating the recurrence and then extracting coefficients, we get

$$p(z) = z \sum_{k \geq 0} \left( e^z - e^{z(1-1/2^k)} \right); \quad (39c)$$

$$p_n = n \sum_{k \geq 0} \left( 1 - \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2^k} \right)^{n-1} \right). \quad (39d)$$

It is easy to verify the natural approximation  $p_n \sim nP(n)$ , where  $P(x)$  is the harmonic sum

$$P(x) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \left( 1 - e^{-x/2^k} \right). \quad (40)$$

We have already derived the asymptotic expansion of  $P(x)$ , as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ , by use of Mellin transforms in (2.28). The result follows immediately. ■

Theorem 19 generalizes to the biased case, where the bits of each element are independently 0 with probability  $p$  and 1 with probability  $q = 1 - p$ . The average external path length is asymptotically  $(n \log n) / H$ , where  $H$  is the entropy function  $H = -p \log p - q \log q$ . In the case of unsuccessful searches, a similar approach shows that the average number of

bit inspections is  $\sim (\log n)/H$ . The variance is  $O(1)$  with fluctuation in the unbiased case [Jacquet and Régnier 1986], [Kirschenhofer and Prodinger 1986]. Variance estimates in this range of problems involve interesting connections with modular functions [Kirschenhofer and Prodinger 1988]. The variance increases to  $\sim c \log n + O(1)$ , for some constant  $c$ , in the biased case [Jacquet and Régnier 1986]. The limiting distributions are studied in [Jacquet and Régnier 1986] and [Pittel 1986]. The height of a trie has mean  $\sim 2 \log_2 n$  and variance  $O(1)$  [Flajolet 1983]. Limiting distributions of the height are studied in [Flajolet 1983] and [Pittel 1986].

Another important statistic on tries, besides search time, is storage space. Unlike binary search trees, the amount of auxiliary space used by tries, measured in terms of the number of internal nodes, is variable. The following theorem shows that the average number of internal nodes in a trie is about 44 percent more than the number of elements stored in the trie.

**THEOREM 20** [Knuth 1973b]. *The expected number  $i_n$  of internal nodes in a random unbiased trie with  $n$  external nodes is  $(n/\log 2)(1 + Q(\log_2 n)) + O(\sqrt{n})$ , where  $Q(u)$  is a periodic function of small amplitude with period 1 and mean value 0.*

**PROOF.** The VF corresponding to the number of internal nodes is

$$i[t] = \delta_{|t|>1} + i[t_0] \cdot I[t_1] + I[t_0] \cdot i[t_1]. \quad (41a)$$

Theorem 18 translates this to

$$i(z) = e^z - 1 - z + 2e^{z/2}i\left(\frac{z}{2}\right). \quad (41b)$$

By iterating the recurrence and then extracting coefficients, we get

$$i(z) = \sum_{k \geq 0} 2^k \left( e^z - \left(1 + \frac{z}{2^k}\right) e^{(1-1/2^k)z} \right); \quad (41c)$$

$$i_n = \sum_{k \geq 0} 2^k \left( 1 - \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^k}\right)^n - \frac{n}{2^k} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^k}\right)^{n-1} \right). \quad (41d)$$

We can approximate  $i_n$  to within  $O(\sqrt{n})$  in a natural way by  $S(n)$ , where

$$S(x) = \sum_{k \geq 0} 2^k \left( 1 - e^{-x/2^k} \left(1 + \frac{x}{2^k}\right) \right). \quad (42a)$$

Equation (42a) is a harmonic sum, and its Mellin transform  $S^*(s)$  can be computed readily:

$$S^*(s) = \frac{(s+1), (s)}{1 - 2^{s+1}}, \quad (42b)$$

where the fundamental strip of  $S^*(s)$  is  $\langle -2; -1 \rangle$ . The result follows by computing the residues in the right half-plane  $\Re(s) \geq -1$ . There is a simple pole at  $s = 0$  due to  $(s)$  and poles at  $-1 + 2k\pi i / \log 2$  due to the denominator of (42b). ■

In the biased case, the expected number of internal nodes is  $\approx n/H$ . The variance for both the unbiased and biased case is  $O(n)$ , which includes a fluctuating term [Jacquet and Régnier 1987]; the distribution of the number of internal nodes is normal [Jacquet and Régnier 1986].

Theorem 20, as do a number of the results about tries, generalizes to the case in which each external node in the trie represents a page of secondary storage capable of storing  $b \geq 1$  elements. Such tries are generally called *b-tries*. The analysis uses truncated VFs, as in the second quicksort example in Section 4.2, to stop the recursion when the subtree has  $\leq b$  elements. The result applies equally well to the extendible hashing scheme of [Fagin et al 1979], where the trie is built upon the hashed values of the elements, rather than upon the elements themselves. Extendible hashing will be considered further in Section 5.1.

**THEOREM 21** [Knuth 1973b]. *The expected number of pages of capacity  $b$  needed to store a file of  $n$  records using  $b$ -tries or extendible hashing is  $(n/(b \log 2))(1 + R(\log_2 n)) + O(\sqrt{n})$ , where  $R(u)$  is periodic with period 1 and mean value 0.*

**Patricia Tries.** Every external node in a trie of size  $\geq 2$  has a sibling, but that is not generally the case for internal nodes. A more compact form of tries, called *Patricia tries*, can be obtained by collapsing the internal nodes with no sibling. Statistics on Patricia tries are analyzed in [Knuth 1973b] and [Kirschenhofer and Proding 1986].

**Radix-Exchange Sorting.** It is no accident that radix-exchange tries and the radix-exchange sorting algorithm have a common name. Radix-exchange sorting is related to tries in a way very similar to how quicksort is related to binary search trees, except that the relationship is even closer. All the average-case analyses in this section carry over to the analysis of radix-exchange sorting: The distribution of the number of partitioning stages used by radix-exchange sorting to sort  $n$  numbers is the same as the distribution of the number of internal nodes in a trie, and the distribution of the number of bit inspections done by radix-exchange sorting is same as the distribution of the external path length of a trie.

## 4.4. Digital Search Trees

*Digital search trees* are like tries except that the elements are stored in the internal nodes, or equivalently they are like binary search trees except that the branching at level  $i$  is determined by the  $(i + 1)$ st bit rather than by a full element-to-element comparison. The digital search tree  $\mathcal{DST}(S)$  for a sequence  $S$  of inserted elements is defined recursively by

$$\mathcal{DST}(S) = \begin{cases} \langle \mathcal{DST}(S_0), s_1, \mathcal{DST}(S_1) \rangle, & \text{if } |S| \geq 1; \\ \langle \blacksquare \rangle, & \text{if } |S| = 0, \end{cases} \quad (43)$$

where  $s_1$  is the first element of  $S$ , and the sequence  $S_0$  of elements in the left subtree is formed by taking the elements in  $S - \{s_1\}$  that have 0 as the first bit and then throwing away the first bit. The sequence  $S_1$  for the right subtree is defined symmetrically for the elements with 1 as their first bit. Like binary search trees, the size of the tree is its number of internal nodes, and its shape is sensitive to the order in which the elements are inserted.

The empty digital search tree is denoted by the external node  $\blacksquare$ . Our probability model is the same as for tries, except that the probability that a tree of  $n$  elements has a left subtree of size  $k$  and a right subtree of size  $n - k - 1$  is  $\binom{n-1}{k}/2^{n-1}$ . The class of all digital search trees is denoted  $\mathcal{DST}$ .

The nature of the decomposition in (43) suggests that we use EGFs of expectations in our analysis, as in the last section, but the admissibility theorem takes a different form:

**THEOREM 22.** *The sum and subtree product valuation functions are admissible for the class  $\mathcal{DST}$  of digital search trees:*

$$\begin{aligned} v[t] = u[t] + w[t] &\implies v(z) = u(z) + w(z); \\ v[t] = u[t_0] \cdot w[t_1] &\implies v(z) = \int_0^z u\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) w\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) dt, \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_0$  and  $t_1$  denote the left and right subtrees of  $t$ .

Tries are preferred in practice over digital search trees, since the element comparison done at each node in a digital search tree takes longer than the bit comparison done in a trie, and the elements in a trie are kept in sorted order. We do not have space in this manuscript to include the relevant analysis; instead we refer the reader to [Knuth 1973b], [Konheim and Newman 1973], [Flajolet and Sedgewick 1986], and [Kirschenhofer and Prodinger 1986]. The key difference between the analysis of digital search trees and the analysis of tries in the last section is that the equations over the EGFs that result from Theorem 22 are typically difference-differential equations, to which the Mellin techniques that worked so well for tries cannot be applied directly. Instead the asymptotics come by an application due to S. O. Rice of the following classical formula from the calculus of finite differences; the proof of the formula is an easy application of Cauchy's formula.

**THEOREM 23.** *Let  $C$  be a closed curve encircling the points  $0, 1, \dots, n$ , and let  $f(z)$  be analytic inside  $C$ . Then we have*

$$\sum_k \binom{n}{k} (-1)^k f(k) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C B(n+1, -z) f(z) dz,$$

where  $B(x, y) = \frac{\Gamma(x)\Gamma(y)}{\Gamma(x+y)}$  is the classical Beta function.

**THEOREM 24** [Knuth 1973b], [Konheim and Newman 1973]. *The expected internal path length of a random digital search tree is*

$$(n+1) \log_2 n + \left( \frac{\gamma - 1}{\log 2} + \frac{1}{2} - \alpha + P(\log_2 n) \right) n + O(\sqrt{n}),$$

where  $\gamma = 0.57721\dots$  is Euler's constant,  $\alpha = 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{15} + \dots = 1.606695\dots$ , and  $P(u)$  is a periodic function with period 1 and very small amplitude.

## 5. Hashing and Address Computation Techniques

In this section we consider several well-known hashing algorithms, including separate chaining, coalesced hashing, uniform probing, double hashing, secondary clustering, and linear probing, and we also discuss the related methods of interpolation search and distribution sorting. Our machine-independent model of search performance for hashing is the number of probes made into the hash table during the search. We are primarily interested in the expected number of probes per search, but in some cases we also consider the distribution of the number of probes and the expected maximum number of probes among all the searches in the table.

With hashing, searches can be performed in constant time, on the average, regardless of the number of elements in the hash table. All hashing algorithms use a pre-defined *hash function*

$$\text{hash} : \{\text{all possible elements}\} \rightarrow \{1, 2, \dots, m\} \quad (1)$$

that assigns a *hash address* to each of the  $n$  elements. Hashing algorithms differ from one another in how they resolve the *collision* that results when an element's hash address is already occupied. The two main techniques for resolving collisions are chaining (in which links are used to explicitly link together elements with the same hash address) and open addressing (where the search path through the table is defined implicitly). We study these two classes of hashing algorithms in the next two sections.

We use the *Bernoulli probability model* for our average-case analysis: We assume that all  $m^n$  possible sequences of  $n$  hash addresses (or *hash sequences*) are equally likely. Simulation studies confirm that this is a reasonable assumption for well-designed hash functions. Further discussion of hash functions, including universal hash functions, appears in [Mehlhorn and Tsakalidis 1989]. We assume that an unsuccessful search can begin at any of the  $m$  slots in the hash table with equal probability, and the object of a successful search is equally likely to be any of the  $n$  elements in the table. Each insertion is typically preceded by an unsuccessful search to verify that the element is not already in the table, and so for simplicity we shall identify the insertion time with the time for the unsuccessful search. We denote the expected number of probes per unsuccessful search (or insertion) in a hash table with  $n$  elements by  $\overline{U}_n$ , and the expected number of probes per successful search by  $\overline{C}_n$ .

## 5.1. Bucket Algorithms and Hashing by Chaining

**Separate Chaining.** One of the most obvious techniques for resolving collisions is to link together all the elements with the same hash address into a list or chain. The generic name for this technique is *separate chaining*. The first variant we shall study stores the chains in auxiliary memory; the  $i$ th slot in the hash table contains a link to the start of the chain of elements with hash address  $i$ . This particular variant is typically called *indirect chaining*, because the hash table stores only pointers, not the elements themselves.

Search time clearly depends upon the number of elements in the chain searched. For each  $1 \leq i \leq m$ , we refer to the set of elements with hash address  $i$  as the  $i$ th bucket. We define  ${}^m_n X_i$  (or simply  $X_i$ ) in the Bernoulli model to be the RV describing the number of elements in bucket  $i$ . This model is sometimes called the *urn model*, and the distribution of  $X_i$  is called the *occupancy distribution*. Distributions of this sort appear in the analyses of each of the chaining algorithms we consider in this section, and they serve to unify our analyses. Urn models were discussed in Section 1.3.

An unsuccessful search on a chain of length  $k$  makes one probe per element, plus one probe to find the link to the beginning of the chain. This allows us to express the expected number of probes per unsuccessful search as

$$\overline{U}_n = \mathbf{E} \left\{ \frac{1}{m} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} (1 + X_i) \right\}. \quad (2a)$$

By symmetry, the expected values  $\mathbf{E}\{X_i\}$  are the same for each  $1 \leq i \leq m$ , so we can restrict our attention to one particular bucket, say, bucket 1. (For simplicity, we shall abbreviate  $X_1$  by  $X$ .) Eq. (2a) simplifies to

$$\overline{U}_n = 1 + \mathbf{E}\{X\}. \quad (2b)$$

For successful searches, each chain of length  $k$  contributes  $2+3+\cdots+(k+1) = 3k/2+k^2/2$  probes. The expected number of probes per successful search is thus

$$\overline{C}_n = \mathbf{E} \left\{ \frac{1}{n} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \frac{3}{2} X_i + \frac{1}{2} X_i^2 \right) \right\} = \frac{m}{n} \left( \frac{3}{2} \mathbf{E}\{X\} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{E}\{X^2\} \right). \quad (3)$$

We can compute (2b) and (3) in a unified way via the PGF

$$X(u) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \Pr\{X = k\} u^k. \quad (4)$$

Eqs. (2b) and (3) for  $\overline{U}_n$  and  $\overline{C}_n$  are expressible simply in terms of derivatives of  $X(u)$ :

$$\overline{U}_n = 1 + X'(1); \quad \overline{C}_n = \frac{m}{n} \left( 2X'(1) + \frac{1}{2} X''(1) \right). \quad (5)$$

We shall determine  $X(u)$  by extending the admissible constructions we developed in Section 1.3 for the urn model. This approach will be especially useful for our analyses

later in this section of the maximum bucket occupancy, extendible hashing, and coalesced hashing. We consider the hash table as the  $m$ -ary partitional product of the individual buckets

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{B} * \mathcal{B} * \cdots * \mathcal{B}. \quad (6a)$$

The new twist here is that some of the elements in the table are “marked” according to some rule. (We shall explain shortly how this relates to separate chaining.) We let  $H_{k,n,m}$  be the number of  $m^n$  hash sequences for which  $k$  of the elements are marked, and we denote its EGF by

$$\widehat{H}(u, z) = \sum_{k,n \geq 0} H_{k,n,m} u^k \frac{z^n}{n!}. \quad (6b)$$

By analogy with Theorem 1.4 for EGFs, the following theorem shows that the partitional product in (6a) translates into a product of EGFs; the proof is similar to that of Theorem 1.4 and is omitted for brevity.

**THEOREM 1.** *If the number of marked elements in bucket  $i$  is a function of only the number of elements in bucket  $i$ , then the EGF  $\widehat{H}(u, z) = \sum_{k,n \geq 0} H_{k,n,m} u^k z^n / n!$  can be decomposed into*

$$\widehat{H}(u, z) = \widehat{B}_1(u, z) \cdot \widehat{B}_2(u, z) \cdot \cdots \cdot \widehat{B}_m(u, z), \quad (6c)$$

where

$$\widehat{B}_i(u, z) = \sum_{t \geq 0} u^{f_i(t)} \frac{z^t}{t!}, \quad (6d)$$

and  $f_i(t)$  is the number of marked elements in bucket  $i$  when there are  $t$  elements in bucket  $i$ .

We are interested in the number of elements in bucket 1, so we adopt the marking rule that all elements in bucket 1 are marked, and the other elements are left unmarked. In terms of Theorem 1, we have  $f_1(t) = t$  and  $\widehat{B}_1(u, z) = \sum_{t \geq 0} u^t z^t / t! = e^{uz}$  for bucket 1, and  $f_i(t) = 0$  and  $\widehat{B}_i(u, z) = \sum_{t \geq 0} z^t / t! = e^z$  for the other buckets  $2 \leq i \leq m$ . Substituting this into Theorem 1, we have

$$\widehat{H}(u, z) = e^{(m-1+u)z}. \quad (7a)$$

We can obtain the EGF of  $X(u)$  by dividing each  $H_{k,n,m}$  term in (6b) by  $m^n$ , or equivalently by replacing  $z$  by  $z/m$ . Combining this with (7a) gives

$$\widehat{H}\left(u, \frac{z}{m}\right) = \sum_{n \geq 0} X(u) \frac{z^n}{n!} = e^{(m-1+u)z/m}. \quad (7b)$$

Hence, we have

$$X(u) = \left(\frac{m-1+u}{m}\right)^n; \quad X'(1) = \frac{n}{m}; \quad X''(1) = \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2}. \quad (7c)$$

We get the following theorem by substituting the expressions for  $X'(1)$  and  $X''(1)$  into (5); the term  $\alpha = n/m$  is called the *load factor*.

**THEOREM 2.** *The expected number of probes per unsuccessful and successful search for indirect chaining, when there are  $n$  elements in a hash table of  $m$  slots, is*

$$\overline{U}_n = 1 + \frac{n}{m} = 1 + \alpha; \quad \overline{C}_n = 2 + \frac{n-1}{2m} \sim 2 + \frac{\alpha}{2}. \quad (8)$$

We can also derive (8) in an *ad hoc* way by decomposing  $X$  into the sum of  $n$  independent 0–1 RVs

$$X = x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n, \quad (9)$$

where  $x_i = 1$  if the  $i$ th element goes into bucket  $i$ , and  $x_i = 0$  otherwise. Each  $x_i$  has the same distribution as  ${}_1^m X_1$ , and its PGF is clearly  $(m-1+u)/m$ . Since the PGF of a sum of independent RVs is equal to the product of the PGFs, we get Eq. (7c) for  $X(u)$ . We can also derive the formula for  $\overline{C}_n$  from the one for  $\overline{U}_n$  by noting that Eq. (4.25) for binary search trees holds for separate chaining as well.

**EXAMPLES.** 1. *Direct chaining.* A more efficient version of separate chaining, called *direct chaining*, stores the first element of each chain directly in the hash table itself. This shortens each successful search time by one probe, and the expected unsuccessful search time is reduced by  $\Pr\{X > 0\} = 1 - X(0) = 1 - (1 - 1/m)^n \sim 1 - e^{-\alpha}$  probes. We get

$$\overline{U}_n = \left(1 - \frac{1}{m}\right)^n + \frac{n}{m} \sim e^{-\alpha} + \alpha; \quad \overline{C}_n = 1 + \frac{n-1}{2m} \sim 1 + \alpha. \quad (10)$$

2. *Direct chaining with relocation.* The above variant is wasteful of hash table slots, because auxiliary space is used to store colliders even though there might be empty slots available in the hash table. (And for that reason, the load factor  $\alpha = n/m$  defined above is not a true indication of space usage.) The method of *direct chaining with relocation* stores all elements directly in the hash table. A special situation arises when an element  $x$  with hash address  $hash(x)$  collides during insertion with another element  $x'$ . If  $x'$  is the first element in its chain, then  $x$  is inserted into an empty slot in the table and linked to the end of the chain. Otherwise,  $x'$  is not at the start of the chain, so  $x'$  is relocated to an empty slot in order to make room for  $x$ ; the link to  $x'$  from its predecessor in the chain must be updated. The successful search time is the same as before. Unsuccessful searches can start in the middle of a chain; each chain of length  $k > 0$  contributes  $k(k+1)/2$  probes. A search starting at one of the  $m - n$  empty slots takes one probe. This gives us

$$\overline{U}_n = X'(1) + \frac{1}{2}X''(1) + \Pr\{\text{slot } hash(x) \text{ is empty}\} = 1 + \frac{n(n-1)}{2m^2} \sim 1 + \frac{\alpha^2}{2}. \quad (11)$$

The main difficulty with this algorithm is the overhead of moving elements, which can be expensive for large record elements and might not be allowed if there are pointers to the elements from outside the hash table. Updating the previous link requires either the use of bidirectional or circular chains or recomputing the hash address of  $x'$  and following links until  $x'$  is reached. None of these alternatives is attractive, and we shall soon consider a better alternative called *coalesced hashing*, which has nearly the same number of probes per search, but without the overhead. ■

**Distribution Sorting.** Bucketing can also be used to sort efficiently in linear time when the values of the elements are smoothly distributed. Suppose for simplicity that the  $n$  values are real numbers in the unit interval  $[0, 1)$ . The *distribution sort* algorithm works by breaking up the range of values into  $m$  buckets  $[0, \frac{1}{m}), [\frac{1}{m}, \frac{2}{m}), \dots, [\frac{m-1}{m}, 1)$ ; the elements are partitioned into the buckets based upon their values. Each bucket is sorted using selection sort (cf. Section 3.5) or some other simple quadratic sorting method. The sorted buckets are then appended together to get the final sorted output.

Selection sort uses  $\binom{k}{2}$  comparisons to sort  $k$  elements. The average number of comparisons  $\overline{C}_n$  used by distribution sort is thus

$$\overline{C}_n = \mathbf{E} \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \binom{X_i}{2} \right\} = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \mathbf{E} \left\{ \frac{X_i(X_i - 1)}{2} \right\} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} X_i''(1). \quad (12a)$$

By (7c), we have  $\overline{C}_n = n(n-1)/(2m)$  when the values of the elements are independently and uniformly distributed. The other work done by the algorithm takes  $O(n+m)$  time, so this gives a linear-time sorting algorithm when we choose  $m = \Theta(n)$ . (Note that this does not contradict the well-known  $\Omega(n \log n)$  lower bound on the average sorting time in the comparison model, since this is not a comparison-based algorithm.)

The assumption that the values are independently and uniformly distributed is not always easy to justify, unlike for the case of hashing, because there is no hash function to scramble the values; the partitioning is based upon the elements' raw values. Suppose the elements are independently distributed according to density function  $f(x)$ . In the following analysis, suggested by R. M. Karp [Knuth 1973b, 5.2.1–38], [Devroye 1986b], we assume that  $\int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx < \infty$ , which assures that  $f(x)$  is well-behaved. For each  $n$  we choose  $m$  so that  $n/m \rightarrow \alpha$ , for some positive constant  $\alpha$ , as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . We define  $p_i = \int_{A_i} f(x) dx$  to be the probability that an element falls into the  $i$ th bucket  $A_i = [\frac{i-1}{m}, \frac{i}{m})$ . For general  $f(x)$ , Eq. (7c) for  $X_i(u)$  becomes

$$X_i(u) = ((1 - p_i) + p_i u)^n. \quad (12b)$$

By (12a) and (12b) we have

$$\overline{C}_n = \binom{n}{2} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} p_i^2 = \binom{n}{2} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \int_{A_i} f(x) dx \right)^2. \quad (12c)$$

The last summation in (12c) can be bounded by an application of Jensen's inequality, treating  $f(x)$  as a RV with  $x$  uniformly distributed:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \int_{A_i} f(x) dx \right)^2 &= \frac{1}{m^2} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \int_{A_i} f(x) d(mx) \right)^2 \\ &\leq \frac{1}{m^2} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \int_{A_i} f(x)^2 d(mx) \\ &= \frac{1}{m} \int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx. \end{aligned} \quad (12d)$$

We can show that the upper bound (12d) is asymptotically tight by computing a corresponding lower bound. We have

$$n \sum_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \int_{A_i} f(x) dx \right)^2 = \frac{n}{m} \int_0^1 f_n(x)^2 dx,$$

where  $f_n(x) = mp_i$ , for  $x \in A_i$ , is the histogram approximation of  $f(x)$ , which converges to  $f(x)$  almost everywhere. By Fatou's lemma, we get the lower bound

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n}{m} \int_0^1 f_n(x)^2 dx = \alpha \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^1 f_n(x)^2 dx \geq \alpha \int_0^1 \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x)^2 dx = \alpha \int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx.$$

Substituting this approximation and (12d) into (12c), we find that the average number of comparisons is

$$\overline{C}_n \sim \frac{\alpha n}{2} \int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx. \quad (12e)$$

The coefficient of the linear term in (12e) is proportional to  $\int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx$ , which can be very large. The erratic behavior due to nonuniform  $f(x)$  can be alleviated by one level of recursion, in which the above algorithm is used to sort the individual buckets: Let us assume that  $m = n$ . If the number  $X_i$  of elements in bucket  $i$  is more than 1, we sort the bucket by breaking up the range  $[\frac{i-1}{n}, \frac{i}{n}]$  into  $X_i$  subbuckets, and proceed as before. The surprising fact, which can be shown by techniques similar to those above, is that  $\overline{C}_n$  is bounded by  $n/2$  in the limit, regardless of  $f(x)$  (assuming of course that our assumption  $\int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx < \infty$  is satisfied).

**THEOREM 3** [Devroye 1986b]. *The expected number of comparisons  $\overline{C}_n$  done by two-level bucketing to sort  $n$  elements that are independently distributed with density function  $f(x)$ , which satisfies  $\int_0^1 f(x)^2 dx < \infty$ , is*

$$\overline{C}_n \sim \frac{n}{2} \int_0^1 e^{-f(x)} dx \leq \frac{n}{2}.$$

The variance and higher moments of the number of probes are also small. If the unit interval assumption is not valid and the values of the elements are not bounded, we can redefine the interval to be  $[x_{\min}, x_{\max}]$  and apply the same basic idea given above. The analysis becomes a little more complicated; details appear in [Devroye 1986b].

For the actual implementation, a hashing scheme other than separate chaining can be used to store the elements in the table. Sorting with linear probing is discussed at the end of the section. An application of bucketing to fast sorting on associative secondary storage devices appears in [Lindstrom and Vitter 1985]. A randomized algorithm that is optimal for sorting with multiple disks is given in [Vitter and Shriver, 1990].

**Interpolation Search.** Newton's method and the secant method are well-known schemes for determining the leading  $k$  bits of a zero of a continuous function  $f(x)$  in  $O(\log k)$  iterations. (By "zero," we mean a solution  $x$  to the equation  $f(x) = 0$ .) Starting with an initial approximation  $x_0$ , the methods produce a sequence of refined approximations  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  that converge to a zero  $x^*$ , assuming that  $f(x)$  is well-behaved. The discrete analogue is called *interpolation search*, in which the  $n$  elements are in a sorted array, and the goal is to find the element  $x^*$  with a particular value  $c$ . Variants of this method are discussed in [Mehlhorn and Tsakalidis 1989].

THEOREM 4 [Yao and Yao 1976], [Gonnet, Rogers, and George 1980]. *The average number of comparisons per successful search using interpolation search on a sorted array is  $\sim \log_2 \log_2 n$ , assuming that the elements' values are independently and identically distributed.*

This bound is similar to that of the continuous case; we can think of the accuracy  $k$  as being  $\log_2 n$ , the number of bits needed to specify the array position of  $x^*$ . A more detailed probabilistic analysis connecting interpolation search with Brownian motion appears in [Louchard 1983].

PROOF SKETCH. We restrict ourselves to considering the upper bound. Gonnet, Rogers, and George [1980] show by some probabilistic arguments that the probability that at least  $k$  probes are needed to find  $x^*$  is bounded by

$$p_k(t) = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} e^{-t2^{-i}} \right), \quad (13a)$$

where  $t = \log(\pi n/8)$ . Hence, the expected number of probes is bounded by

$$F(t) = \sum_{k \geq 0} p_k(t), \quad (13b)$$

which can be expressed in terms of the harmonic sum

$$F(t) = \frac{1}{Q(t)} \sum_{k \geq 0} Q(t2^k), \quad (13c)$$

where

$$Q(t) = \prod_{i \geq 1} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} e^{-t2^{-i}} \right)^{-1}. \quad (13d)$$

The sum in (13c) is a harmonic sum to which Mellin transforms can be applied to get

$$F(t) \sim \log_2 t + \alpha + P(\log_2 t) + o(1), \quad \text{as } t \rightarrow \infty, \quad (13e)$$

where  $\alpha$  is a constant and  $P(u)$  is a periodic function associated with the poles at  $\chi_k = 2k\pi i / \log 2$ . The  $\log_2 \log_2 n$  bound follows by substituting  $t = \log(\pi n/8)$  into (13e). ■

**Maximum Bucket Occupancy.** An interesting statistic that lies between average-case and worst-case search times is the expected number of elements in the *largest* bucket (also known as the *maximum bucket occupancy*). It has special significance in parallel processing applications in which elements are partitioned randomly into buckets and then the buckets are processed in parallel, each in linear time; in this case, the expected maximum bucket occupancy determines the average running time.

We can make use of the product decomposition (6a) and Theorem 1 to count the number of hash sequences that give a hash table with  $\leq b$  elements in each bucket. We mark all the elements in a bucket if the bucket has  $> b$  elements; otherwise, the elements are

left unmarked. In this terminology, our quantity of interest is simply the number  $H_{0,n,m}$  of hash sequences with no marked elements:

$$\begin{aligned} H_{0,n,m} &= n! [u^0 z^n] \widehat{H}(u, z) \\ &= n! [z^n] \widehat{H}(0, z) \\ &= n! [z^n] (\widehat{B}_1(0, z) \cdot \widehat{B}_2(0, z) \cdot \dots \cdot \widehat{B}_m(0, z)), \end{aligned} \quad (14a)$$

where

$$\widehat{B}_i(0, z) = \sum_{0 \leq n \leq b} \frac{z^n}{n!}, \quad (14b)$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . The sum in (14b) is the truncated exponential, which we denote by  $e_b(z)$ . Hence, the number of hash sequences with  $\leq b$  elements per bucket is

$$H_{0,n,m} = n! [z^n] (e_b(z))^m. \quad (14c)$$

We use  $q_n^{[b]}$  to denote the probability that a random hash sequence puts at most  $b$  elements into each bucket. As in (7b), we can convert from the enumeration  $H_{0,n,m}$  to the probability  $q_n^{[b]}$  by replacing  $z$  in (14c) by  $z/m$ :

$$q_n^{[b]} = n! [z^n] \left( e_b \left( \frac{z}{m} \right) \right)^m. \quad (14d)$$

There is a close relation between the EGF of Bernoulli statistics and the corresponding Poisson statistic:

**THEOREM 5.** *If  $\widehat{g}(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n z^n / n!$  is the EGF for a measure  $g_n$  (for example, probability, expectation, moment) in the Bernoulli model, then  $e^{-\alpha} \widehat{g}(\alpha)$  is the corresponding measure if the total number of elements  $X_1 + \dots + X_m$  is Poisson with mean  $\alpha$ .*

**PROOF.** The measure in the Poisson model is the conditional expectation of the measure in the Bernoulli model, namely,

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} g_n \Pr\{X_1 + \dots + X_m = n\} = \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n \frac{e^{-\alpha} \alpha^n}{n!} = e^{-\alpha} \widehat{g}(\alpha). \quad \blacksquare$$

We shall use Theorem 5 and direct our attention to the Poisson model, where the number of elements in each bucket is Poisson distributed with mean  $\alpha$ , and hence the total number of elements is a Poisson RV with mean  $m\alpha$ . (The analysis of the Bernoulli case can be handled in much the same way that we shall handle the analysis of extendible hashing later in this section, so covering the Poisson case will present us with a different perspective.)

We let  $M_\alpha$  denote the maximum number of elements per bucket in the Poisson model, and we use  $p_\alpha^{[b]}$  to denote the probability that  $M_\alpha \leq b$ . By Theorem 5, we have

$$p_\alpha^{[b]} = (e^{-\alpha} e_b(\alpha))^m.$$

(This can also be derived directly by noting that the  $m$  buckets are independent and that the Poisson probability that a given bucket has  $\leq b$  elements is  $e^{-\alpha}e_b(\alpha)$ .) What we want is to compute the expected maximum bucket occupancy

$$\overline{M_\alpha} = \sum_{b \geq 1} b(p_\alpha^{[b]} - p_\alpha^{[b-1]}) = \sum_{b \geq 0} (1 - p_\alpha^{[b]}). \tag{15}$$

We shall consider the case  $\alpha = o(\log m)$  (although the basic principles of our analysis will apply for any  $\alpha$ ). A very common occurrence in occupancy RVs is a sharp rise in the distribution  $p_\alpha^{[b]}$  from  $\approx 0$  to  $\approx 1$  in the “central region” near the mean value. Intuitively, a good approximation for the mean is the value  $\tilde{b}$  such that  $p_\alpha^{[\tilde{b}]}$  is sufficiently away from 0 and 1. We choose the value  $\tilde{b} > \alpha$  such that

$$\frac{e^{-\alpha} \alpha^{\tilde{b}+1}}{(\tilde{b} + 1)!} \leq \frac{1}{m} < \frac{e^{-\alpha} \alpha^{\tilde{b}}}{\tilde{b}!}. \tag{16a}$$

When  $\alpha = \Theta(1)$ , it is easy to see from (16) that  $\tilde{b} \sim \Gamma^{-1}(m) \sim (\log m) / \log \log m$ . (Here  $\Gamma^{-1}(y)$  denotes the inverse of the Gamma function  $\Gamma(x)$ .) We define  $\lambda$  using the left-hand side of (16a) so that

$$\frac{e^{-\alpha} \alpha^{\tilde{b}+1}}{(\tilde{b} + 1)!} = \frac{\lambda}{m}. \tag{16b}$$

In particular we have  $\alpha/(\tilde{b} + 1) < \lambda \leq 1$ . The following bound illustrates the sharp increase in  $p_\alpha^{[b]}$  as a function of  $b$  in the vicinity  $b \approx \tilde{b}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} p_\alpha^{[\tilde{b}+k]} &= (e^{-\alpha} e_{\tilde{b}+k}(\alpha))^m = \left( 1 - e^{-\alpha} \sum_{b > \tilde{b}+k} \frac{\alpha^b}{b!} \right)^m \\ &\sim \left( 1 - \frac{e^{-\alpha} \alpha^{\tilde{b}+k+1}}{(\tilde{b} + k + 1)!} \right)^m \sim \left( 1 - \frac{\lambda \alpha^k}{m \tilde{b}^k} \right)^m \sim e^{-\lambda \alpha^k / \tilde{b}^k}. \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

The approximation is valid uniformly for  $k = o(\sqrt{\tilde{b}})$ . The expression  $1 - p_\alpha^{[\tilde{b}+k]}$  continues to decrease exponentially as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . The maximum bucket size is equal to  $\tilde{b}$  with probability  $\sim e^{-\lambda}$  and to  $\tilde{b} + 1$  with probability  $\sim 1 - e^{-\lambda}$ . The net effect is that we can get an asymptotic approximation for  $\overline{M_\alpha}$  by approximating  $1 - p_\alpha^{[b]}$  in (15) by a 0–1 step function with the step at  $b = \tilde{b}$ :

$$\overline{M_\alpha} \sim \sum_{0 \leq b < \tilde{b}} (1) + \sum_{b \geq \tilde{b}} (0) \sim \tilde{b}. \tag{18}$$

The same techniques can be applied for general  $\alpha$ . The asymptotic behavior of  $\overline{M_\alpha}$  for the Bernoulli and Poisson models is the same.

**THEOREM 6** [Kolchin et al 1978]. *In the Bernoulli model with  $n$  elements inserted in  $m$  buckets ( $\alpha = n/m$ ) or in the Poisson model in which the occupancy of each bucket is an*

independent Poisson RV with mean  $\alpha$ , the expected maximum bucket occupancy is

$$\overline{M}_\alpha \sim \begin{cases} \frac{\log m}{\log \log m}, & \text{if } \alpha = \Theta(1); \\ \tilde{b}, & \text{if } \alpha = o(\log m); \\ \alpha, & \text{if } \alpha = \omega(\log m), \end{cases}$$

where  $\tilde{b}$  is given by (16a).

When  $\alpha$  gets large,  $\alpha = \omega(\log m)$ , the bucket occupancies become fairly uniform; the difference  $\overline{M}_\alpha - \alpha$  converges in probability to  $\sim \sqrt{2\alpha \log m}$ , provided that  $\alpha = m^{O(1)}$ .

**Extendible Hashing.** A quantity related to maximum bucket occupancy is the expected directory size used in *extendible hashing*, in which the hash table is allowed to grow and shrink dynamically [Fagin et al 1979], [Larson 1978]. Each slot in the hash table models a page of secondary storage capable of storing up to  $b$  elements. If a bucket overflows, the number of buckets in the table is successively doubled until each bucket has at most  $b$  elements. The directory acts as a  $b$ -trie, based upon the infinite precision hash addresses of the elements (cf. Section 4.3). For this reason, the analyses of directory size and trie height are very closely related.

At any given time, the directory size is equal to the number of buckets in the table, which is always a power of 2. The probability  $\pi_n^{[h]}$  that the directory size is  $\leq 2^h$  is

$$\pi_n^{[h]} = n! [z^n] \left( e_b \left( \frac{z}{2^h} \right) \right)^{2^h}. \quad (19a)$$

This is identical to (14d) with  $m = 2^h$ , except that in this case  $m$  is the parameter that varies, and the bucket capacity  $b$  stays fixed. We can also derive (19a) via the admissibility theorem for tries (Theorem 4.18):  $\pi_n^{[h]}$  is the probability that the height of a random  $b$ -trie is  $\leq h$ . The EGF  $\pi^{[h]}(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \pi_n^{[h]} z^n / n!$  satisfies

$$\pi^{[h]}(z) = \left( \pi^{[h-1]} \left( \frac{z}{2} \right) \right)^2; \quad \pi^{[0]}(z) = e_b(z). \quad (19b)$$

Hence, (19a) follows.

**THEOREM 7** [Flajolet 1983]. *In the Bernoulli model, the expected directory size in extendible hashing for bucket size  $b > 1$  when there are  $n$  elements present is*

$$\overline{S}_n \sim \left( \frac{(1 - \frac{1}{b})}{(\log 2)(b+1)!^{1/b}} + Q \left( \left( 1 + \frac{1}{b} \right) \log_2 n \right) \right) n^{1+1/b},$$

where  $Q(u)$  is a periodic function with period 1 and mean value 0.

**PROOF SKETCH.** We can express the average directory size  $\overline{S}_n$  in terms of  $\pi_n^{[h]}$  in a way similar to (15):

$$\overline{S}_n = \sum_{h \geq 1} 2^h (\pi_n^{[h]} - \pi_n^{[h-1]}) = \sum_{h \geq 0} 2^h (1 - \pi_n^{[h]}). \quad (20)$$

The first step in the derivation is to apply the saddle point method of Section 2.3. We omit the details for brevity. As for the maximum bucket occupancy, the probabilities  $\pi_n^{[h]}$  change quickly from  $\approx 0$  to  $\approx 1$  in a “central region,” which in this case is where  $h = \tilde{h} = (1 + 1/b) \log_2 n$ . By saddle point, we get the uniform approximation

$$\pi_n^{[h]} \sim \exp\left(\frac{-n^{b+1}}{(b+1)! 2^{bh}}\right), \quad (21)$$

for  $|h - \tilde{h}| < \log_2 \log n$ . When  $h \geq \tilde{h} + \log_2 \log n$ , approximation (21) is no longer valid, but the terms  $1 - \pi_n^{[h]}$  continue to decrease exponentially with respect to  $h$ . Hence, we can substitute approximation (21) into (20) without affecting the leading terms of  $\overline{S}_n$ . We get  $\overline{S}_n \sim T(n^{b+1}/(b+1)!)$ , where  $T(x)$  is the harmonic sum

$$T(x) = \sum_{h \geq 0} 2^h \left(1 - e^{-x/2^{bh}}\right), \quad (22a)$$

whose Mellin transform is

$$T^*(s) = \frac{-, (s)}{1 - 2^{bs+1}}, \quad (22b)$$

in the fundamental strip  $\langle -1; -1/b \rangle$ . The asymptotic expansion of  $T(x)$ , as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ , is given by the poles of  $T^*(s)$  to the right of the strip. There is a simple pole at  $s = 0$  due to  $, (s)$  and simple poles at  $s = -1/b + 2k\pi i / \log 2$  due to the denominator. The result follows immediately from (2.24). ■

Theorem 7 shows that the leading term of  $\overline{S}_n$  oscillates with  $(1 + 1/b) \log_2 n$ . An intuition as to why there is oscillation can be found in the last summation in (20). The sum samples the terms  $1 - \pi_n^{[h]}$  at each nonnegative integer  $h$  using the exponential weight function  $2^h$ . The value of  $h$  where the approximation (21) changes quickly from  $\approx 0$  to  $\approx 1$  is close to an integer value only when  $(1 + 1/b) \log_2 n$  is close to an integer, thus providing the periodic effect.

It is also interesting to note from Theorem 7 that the directory size is asymptotically superlinear, that is, the directory becomes larger than the file itself when  $n$  is large! Fortunately, convergence is slow, and the nonlinear growth of  $\overline{S}_n$  is not noticeable in practice when  $b$  is large enough, say  $b \geq 40$ . Similar results for the Poisson model appear in [Régnier 1981].

The same techniques apply to the analysis of the expected height  $\overline{H}_n$  of tries:

$$\overline{H}_n = \sum_{h \geq 1} h(\pi_n^{[h]} - \pi_n^{[h-1]}) = \sum_{h \geq 0} (1 - \pi_n^{[h]}). \quad (23)$$

This is the same as (20), but without the weight factor  $2^h$ . (When trie height grows by 1, directory size doubles.)

**THEOREM 8** [Flajolet 1983]. *The expected height in the Bernoulli model of a random  $b$ -trie of  $n$  elements is*

$$\overline{H}_n = \left(1 + \frac{1}{b}\right) \log_2 n + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\gamma - \log((b+1)!)}{b \log 2} + P\left(\left(1 + \frac{1}{b}\right) \log_2 n\right) + o(1),$$

where  $P(u)$  is periodic with period 1, small amplitude, and mean value 0.

In the biased case, where 0 occurs with probability  $p$  and 1 occurs with probability  $q = 1 - p$ , we have

$$\pi^{[h]}(z) = \pi^{[h-1]}(pz) \cdot \pi^{[h-1]}(qz),$$

which gives us

$$\pi^{[h]}(z) = \prod_{1 \leq k \leq h} (e_b(p^k q^{n-k} z))^{(h)}$$

(cf. (19a) and (19b)). Multidimensional versions of extendible hashing have been studied in [Régnier 1985].

**Coalesced Hashing.** We can bypass the problems of direct chaining with relocation by using *hashing with coalescing chains* (or simply *coalesced hashing*). Part of the hash table is dedicated to storing elements that collide when inserted. We redefine  $m'$  to be the number of slots in the hash table. The range of the hash function is restricted to  $\{1, 2, \dots, m\}$ . We call the first  $m$  slots the *address region*; the bottom  $m' - m$  slots, which are used to store colliders, comprise the *cellar*.

When a collision occurs during insertion (because the element's hash address is already occupied), the element is inserted instead into the largest-numbered empty slot in the hash table and is linked to the end of the chain it collided with. This means that the colliding record is stored in the cellar if the cellar is not full. But if there are no empty slots in the cellar, the element ends up in the address region. In the latter case, elements inserted later could collide with this element, and thus their chains would “coalesce.”

If the cellar size is chosen so that it can accommodate all the colliders, then coalesced hashing reduces to separate chaining. It is somewhat surprising that average-case performance can be improved by choosing a smaller cellar size so that coalescing usually occurs. The intuition is that by making the address region larger, the hash addresses of the elements are spread out over a larger area, which helps reduce collisions. This offsets the disadvantages of coalescing, which typically occurs much later. We might be tempted to go to the extreme and eliminate the cellar completely (this variant is called *standard coalesced hashing*), but performance deteriorates. The theorem below gives the expected search times as a function of the load factor  $\alpha = n/m'$  and the address factor  $\beta = m/m'$ . We can use the theorem to determine the optimum  $\beta$ . It turns out that  $\beta_{\text{opt}}$  is a function of  $\alpha$  and of the type of search, but the compromise value  $\beta = 0.86$  gives near optimum search performance for a large range of  $\alpha$  and is recommended for general use.

**THEOREM 9** [Vitter 1983]. *The expected number of probes per search for coalesced hashing in an  $m'$ -slot table with address size  $m = \beta m'$  and with  $n = \alpha m'$  elements is*

$$\overline{U}_n \sim \begin{cases} e^{-\alpha/\beta} + \frac{\alpha}{\beta}, & \text{if } \alpha \leq \lambda\beta; \\ \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{4} \left( e^{2(\alpha/\beta - \lambda)} - 1 \right) \left( 3 - \frac{2}{\beta} + 2\lambda \right) - \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\alpha}{\beta} - \lambda \right), & \text{if } \alpha \geq \lambda\beta; \end{cases}$$

$$\overline{C}_n \sim \begin{cases} 1 + \frac{\alpha}{2\beta}, & \text{if } \alpha \leq \lambda\beta; \\ 1 + \frac{\beta}{8\alpha} \left( e^{2(\alpha/\beta - \lambda)} - 1 - 2\left(\frac{\alpha}{\beta} - \lambda\right) \right) \left( 3 - \frac{2}{\beta} + 2\lambda \right) \\ \quad + \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{\alpha}{\beta} + \lambda \right) + \frac{\lambda}{4} \left( 1 - \frac{\lambda\beta}{\alpha} \right), & \text{if } \alpha \geq \lambda\beta, \end{cases}$$

where  $\lambda$  is the unique nonnegative solution to the equation  $e^{-\lambda} + \lambda = 1/\beta$ .

The method described above is formally known as *late-insertion coalesced hashing* (LICH). Vitter and Chen [1987] also analyze two other methods called *early-insertion coalesced hashing* (EICH) and *varied-insertion coalesced hashing* (VICH). In EICH, a colliding element is inserted immediately after its hash address in the chain, by rerouting pointers. VICH uses the same rule, except when there is a cellar slot in the chain following the element's hash address; in that case, the element is linked into the chain immediately after the last cellar slot in the chain. VICH requires slightly fewer probes per search than the other variants and appears to be optimum among all possible linking methods. Deletion algorithms and implementation issues are also covered in [Vitter and Chen 1987].

**PROOF SKETCH.** We first consider the unsuccessful search case. We count the number  $m^{n+1}\overline{U}_n$  of probes needed to perform all possible unsuccessful searches in all possible hash tables of  $n$  elements. Each chain of length  $\ell$  that has  $t$  elements in the cellar (which we call an  $(\ell, t)$ -chain) contributes

$$\delta_{\ell=0} + \ell + (\ell - t - 1) + (\ell - t - 2) + \cdots + 1 = \delta_{\ell=0} + \ell + \binom{\ell - t}{2} \quad (24a)$$

probes, and we have

$$m^{n+1}\overline{U}_n = m^{n+1}p_n + \sum_{\ell, t} \ell c_n(\ell, t) + \sum_{\ell, t} \binom{\ell - t}{2} c_n(\ell, t), \quad (24b)$$

where  $p_n$  is the probability that the hash address of the element is unoccupied, and  $c_n(\ell, t)$  is the number of  $(\ell, t)$ -chains. The second term is easily seen to be  $nm^n$ , since there are  $n$  elements in each hash table. The evaluations of the first term  $m^{n+1}p_n$  and the third term

$$S_n = \sum_{\ell, t} \binom{\ell - t}{2} c_n(\ell, t) \quad (24c)$$

are similar; for brevity we restrict our attention to the latter. There does not seem to be a closed form expression for  $c_n(\ell, t)$ , but we can develop a recurrence for  $c_n(\ell, t)$  which we can substitute into (24c) to get

$$S_n = (m + 2)^{n-1} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq n-1} \left( \frac{m}{m+2} \right)^j (j - m' + m) \frac{F_j}{m^j}, \quad (25)$$

where  $F_j$  is the number of hash sequences of  $j$  elements that yield full cellars. In terms of probabilities,  $F_j/m^j$  is the probability that the cellar is full after  $j$  insertions.

This provides a link to the occupancy distributions studied earlier. We define the RV  $N_j$  to be the number of elements that collide when inserted, in a hash table of  $j$  elements. The cellar is full after  $k$  insertions if and only if  $N_j \geq m' - m$ ; by taking probabilities, we get

$$\frac{F_j}{m^j} = \Pr\{N_j \geq m' - m\}. \quad (26)$$

This expresses  $F_j/m^j$  as a tail of the probability distribution for  $N_j$ . We can determine the distribution by applying Theorem 1. We let  $H_{k,j,m}$  be the number of hash sequences of  $n$  elements for which  $k$  elements are marked. Our marking rule is that all elements that collide when inserted are marked; that is, for each bucket (hash address)  $i$  with  $s$  elements, there are  $f_i(s) = s - 1 + \delta_{s=0}$  marked elements. By Theorem 1, we have

$$\widehat{H}(u, z) = \sum_{k,j \geq 0} H_{k,j,m} u^k \frac{z^j}{j!} = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq m} \widehat{B}_i(u, z), \quad (27a)$$

where

$$\widehat{B}_i(u, z) = \sum_{t \geq 0} u^{t-1+\delta_{t=0}} \frac{z^t}{t!} = \frac{e^{uz} - 1 + u}{u}, \quad (27b)$$

for each  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . Substituting (27b) into (27a), we get

$$\widehat{H}(u, z) = \left( \frac{e^{uz} - 1 + u}{u} \right)^m. \quad (27c)$$

This allows us to solve for  $F_j/m^j = \Pr\{N_j \geq m' - m\}$ :

$$\Pr\{N_j = k\} = \frac{H_{k,j,m}}{m^j} = j! [u^k z^j] \widehat{H}\left(u, \frac{z}{m}\right); \quad (28a)$$

$$F_j/m^j = 1 - j! [u^{m'-m-1} z^j] \frac{1}{1-u} \widehat{H}\left(u, \frac{z}{m}\right). \quad (28b)$$

We can get asymptotic estimates for (28b) by use of the saddle point method as in our analysis of extendible hashing or by Chernoff bounds as in [Vitter 1983] and [Vitter and Chen 1987]; the details are omitted for brevity. The distribution  $F_j/m^j$  increases sharply from  $\approx 0$  to  $\approx 1$  in the “central region” where

$$\overline{N_j} \approx m' - m. \quad (29a)$$

The expected number of collisions  $\overline{N_j}$  is

$$\overline{N_j} = j! [z^j] \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \widehat{H}\left(u, \frac{z}{m}\right) \Big|_{u=1} = j - m + m \left(1 - \frac{1}{m}\right)^j. \quad (29b)$$

We can solve for the value of  $j = \tilde{j}$  that satisfies (29a) by combining (29a) and (29b) and using the ratios  $\tilde{\alpha} = \tilde{j}/m'$  and  $\beta = m/m'$ . We have

$$e^{-\tilde{\alpha}} + \tilde{\alpha} \approx \frac{1}{\beta}. \quad (29c)$$

In a way similar to (18), we approximate  $F_j/m^j$  by a 0–1 step function with the step at  $j = \tilde{j}$ , and we get

$$S_n \sim (m+2)^{n-1} \sum_{\tilde{j} \leq j \leq n-1} \left( \frac{m}{m+2} \right)^j (j - m' + m), \quad (30)$$

which can be summed easily. The error of approximation can be shown to be negligible, as in the analysis of maximum bucket occupancy and extendible hashing. The analysis of the term  $m^{n+1}p_n$  in (24b) is based upon similar ideas and is omitted for brevity.

For the case of successful searches, the formula for  $\overline{C}_n$  follows from a formula similar to Eq. (4.25) for binary search trees and separate chaining:

$$\overline{C}_n = 1 + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq n-1} (\overline{U}_i - p_i), \quad (31)$$

where  $p_i$  is the term in (24b). ■

A unified analysis of all three variants of coalesced hashing—LICH, EICH, and VICH—is given in [Vitter and Chen, 1987]. The maximum number of probes per search among all the searches in the same table, for the special case of standard LICH (when there is no cellar and  $m = m'$ ), is shown in [Pittel 1987b] to be  $\log_c n - 2 \log_c \log n + O(1)$  with probability  $\sim 1$  for successful searches and  $\log_c n - \log_c \log n + O(1)$  with probability  $\sim 1$  for unsuccessful searches, where  $c = 1/(1 - e^{-\alpha})$ .

## 5.2. Hashing by Open Addressing

An alternative to chaining is to probe an *implicitly* defined sequence of locations while looking for an element. If the element is found, the search is successful; if an “open” (empty) slot is encountered, the search is unsuccessful, and the new element is inserted into the empty slot that terminated the search.

**Uniform Probing.** A simple scheme to analyze, which serves as a good approximation to more practical methods, is *uniform probing*. The probing sequence for each element  $x$  is a random permutation  $h_1(x)h_2(x) \dots h_m(x)$  of  $\{1, 2, \dots, m\}$ . For an unsuccessful search, the probability that  $k$  probes are needed when there are  $n$  elements in the table is

$$p_k = \frac{n^{k-1}(m-n)}{m^k} = \binom{m-k}{m-n-1} / \binom{m}{n}. \quad (32a)$$

Hence, we have

$$\overline{U}_n = \sum_{k \geq 0} k p_k = \frac{1}{\binom{m}{n}} \sum_{k \geq 0} k \binom{m-k}{m-n-1}. \quad (32b)$$

We split  $k$  into two parts  $k = (m+1) - (m-k+1)$ , because we can handle each separately; the  $m-k+1$  term gets “absorbed” into the binomial coefficient.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \overline{U}_n &= \frac{1}{\binom{m}{n}} \sum_{k \geq 0} (m+1) \binom{m-k}{m-n-1} - \frac{1}{\binom{m}{n}} \sum_{k \geq 0} (m-k+1) \binom{m-k}{m-n-1} \\
 &= m+1 - \frac{m-n}{\binom{m}{n}} \sum_{k \geq 0} \binom{m-k+1}{m-n} \\
 &= m+1 - \frac{m-n}{\binom{m}{n}} \binom{m+1}{m-n+1} \\
 &= \frac{m+1}{m-n+1}. \tag{32c}
 \end{aligned}$$

Successful search time for open addressing algorithms satisfy a relation similar to (4.25):

$$\overline{C}_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq n-1} \overline{U}_i. \tag{33}$$

Putting this all together, we get the following theorem:

**THEOREM 10.** *The expected number of probes per unsuccessful and successful search for uniform probing, when there are  $n = m\alpha$  elements in a hash table of  $m$  slots, is*

$$\overline{U}_n = \frac{m+1}{m-n+1} \sim \frac{1}{1-\alpha}; \quad \overline{C}_n = \frac{m+1}{n} (H_{m+1} - H_{m-n+1}) \sim \frac{1}{\alpha} \log \frac{1}{1-\alpha}.$$

The asymptotic formula  $\overline{U}_n \sim 1/(1-\alpha) = 1 + \alpha + \alpha^2 + \dots$  has the following intuitive interpretation: With probability  $\alpha$  we need more than one probe, with probability  $\alpha^2$  we need more than two probes, and so on. The expected maximum search time per hash table is studied in [Gonnet 1981].

**Double Hashing and Secondary Clustering.** The practical limitation on uniform probing is that computing several hash functions is very expensive. However, the performance of uniform probing can be approximated well by use of just two hash functions. In the *double hashing* method, the  $i$ th probe is made at slot

$$h_1(x) + ih_2(x) \bmod m, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i \leq m-1; \tag{34}$$

that is, the probe sequence starts at slot  $h_1(x)$  and steps cyclically through the table with step size  $h_2(x)$ . (For simplicity, we have renumbered the  $m$  table slots to be  $0, 1, \dots, m-1$ .) The value of the second hash function must be relatively prime to  $m$  so that the probe sequence (34) gives a full permutation. Guibas and Szemerédi [1978] show using interesting probabilistic techniques that when  $\alpha < 0.319$  the number of probes per search is asymptotically equal to that of uniform probing, and this has been extended to all fixed  $\alpha < 1$  [Lueker and Molodowitch 1988].

It is often faster in practice to use only one hash function and to define  $h_2(x)$  implicitly in terms of  $h_1(x)$ . For example, if  $m$  is prime, we could set

$$h_2(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } h_1(x) = 0; \\ m - h_1(x), & \text{if } h_1(x) > 0. \end{cases} \tag{35}$$

A useful approximation to this variant is the *secondary clustering* model, in which the initial probe location  $h_1(x)$  uniquely determines the remaining probe locations  $h_2h_3 \dots h_m$ , which form a random permutation of the other  $m-1$  slots.

THEOREM 11 [Knuth 1973b]. *The expected number of probes per unsuccessful and successful search for hashing with secondary clustering, when there are  $n = m\alpha$  elements in a hash table of  $m$  slots, is*

$$\overline{U}_n \sim \frac{1}{1-\alpha} - \alpha + \log \frac{1}{1-\alpha}; \quad \overline{C}_n \sim 1 + \log \frac{1}{1-\alpha} - \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

The proof is a generalization of the method we use below to analyze linear probing. The number of probes per search for secondary clustering is slightly more than for double hashing and uniform probing, but slightly less than for linear probing.

**Linear Probing.** Perhaps the simplest implementation of open addressing is a further extension of (34) and (35), called *linear probing*, in which the unit step size  $h_2(x) \equiv 1$  is used. This causes *primary clustering* in the table, because all the elements with the same hash address follow the same probing sequence.

THEOREM 12 [Knuth 1973b]. *The expected number of probes per unsuccessful and successful search for linear probing, when there are  $n = m\alpha$  elements in a hash table of  $m$  slots, is*

$$\overline{U}_n = \frac{1}{2}(1 + Q_1(m, n)); \quad \overline{C}_n = \frac{1}{2}(1 + Q_0(m, n - 1)), \quad (36)$$

where

$$Q_r(m, n) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \binom{r+k}{k} \frac{n^k}{m^k}.$$

If  $\alpha = n/m$  is a constant bounded away from 1, then we have

$$\overline{U}_n \sim \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{(1-\alpha)^2} \right); \quad \overline{C}_n \sim \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{1-\alpha} \right).$$

For full tables, we have

$$\overline{U}_{m-1} = \frac{m+1}{2}; \quad \overline{C}_m \sim \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi m}{2}} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{24} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2m}} + O(1/m).$$

PROOF. The derivation of the exact formulæ for  $\overline{U}_n$  and  $\overline{C}_n$  is an exercise in combinatorial manipulation. The number of the  $m^n$  hash sequences such that slot 0 is empty is

$$f(m, n) = \left( 1 - \frac{n}{m} \right) m^n. \quad (37)$$

By decomposing the the hash table into two separate parts, we find that the number of hash sequences such that position 0 is empty, positions 1 through  $k$  are occupied, and position  $k+1$  is empty is

$$g(m, n, k) = \binom{n}{k} f(k+1, k) f(m-k-1, n-k). \quad (38)$$

The probability that  $k + 1$  probes are needed for an unsuccessful search is thus

$$p_k = \frac{1}{m^n} \sum_{k \leq j \leq n} g(m, n, j). \quad (39)$$

The formulæ (36) for  $\overline{U}_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} (k + 1)p_k$  and  $\overline{C}_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq n-1} \overline{U}_i$  in terms of  $Q_0(m, n - 1)$  and  $Q_1(m, n)$  follow by applications of Abel's identity (cf. Section 1.4).

When  $\alpha$  is bounded below 1, then we can evaluate  $Q_r(m, n)$  asymptotically by approximating  $n^k/m^k$  in the summations by  $n^k/m^k = \alpha^k$ . The interesting case as far as analysis is concerned is for the full table when  $\alpha \approx 1$ . It is convenient to define the new notation

$$Q_{\{b_k\}} = \sum_{k \geq 0} b_k \frac{(m - 1)^k}{m^k}. \quad (40a)$$

The link between our new and old notation is

$$Q_{\{\binom{r+k}{k}\}}(m) = Q_r(m, m - 1). \quad (40b)$$

Note that the  $Q$  functions each have only a finite number of nonzero terms. The following powerful theorem provides asymptotic expansions for several choices of  $\{b_k\}$ :

**THEOREM 13** [Knuth and Schönhage 1978]. *We have*

$$Q_{\{b_k\}}(m) = \frac{m!}{m^{m-1}} [z^m] A(y(z)), \quad (41a)$$

where  $y(z)$  is defined implicitly by the equation

$$y(z) = ze^{y(z)}, \quad (41b)$$

and  $A(u) = \sum_{k \geq 0} b_k u^{k+1}/(k + 1)$  is the antiderivative of  $B(u) = \sum_{k \geq 0} b_k u^k$ .

**PROOF OF THEOREM 13.** The proof uses an application of Lagrange-Bürmann inversion (Theorem 1.6) applied to  $y(z)$ . The motivation is based upon the fact that sums of the form (40a) are associated with the implicitly defined function  $y(z)$  in a natural way; the number of labeled oriented trees on  $m$  vertices is  $m^{m-1}$ , and its EGF is  $y(z)$ . Also,  $y(z)$  was used in Section 1.4 to derive Abel's identity, and Abel's identity was used above to derive (36). By applying Lagrange-Bürmann inversion to the right-hand side of (41a), with  $\varphi(u) = e^u$ ,  $g(u) = A(u)$ , and  $f(z) = y(z)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{m!}{m^{m-1}} [z^m] A(y(z)) &= \frac{m!}{m^{m-1}} \frac{1}{m} [u^{m-1}] e^{um} A'(u) \\ &= \frac{(m-1)!}{m^{m-1}} [u^{m-1}] e^{um} B(u) \\ &= \frac{(m-1)!}{m^{m-1}} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq m-1} b_k \frac{m^{m-k-1}}{(m-k-1)!} \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq m-1} b_k \frac{(m-1)^k}{m^k} \\ &= Q_{\{b_k\}}(m). \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

By (40b) the sequences  $\{b_k\}$  corresponding to  $Q_0(m, m-1)$  and  $Q_1(m, m-1)$  have generating functions  $B_0(u) = 1/(1-u)$  and  $B_1(u) = 1/(1-u)^2$ , and the corresponding antiderivatives are  $A_0(u) = \log(1/(1-u))$  and  $A_1(u) = 1/(1-u)$ . By applying Theorem 13, we get

$$Q_0(m, m-1) = \frac{m!}{m^{m-1}} [z^m] \log \frac{1}{1-y(z)}; \quad (42a)$$

$$Q_1(m, m-1) = \frac{m!}{m^{m-1}} [z^m] \frac{1}{1-y(z)}. \quad (42b)$$

It follows from the method used in Theorem 4.4 to count the number  $T_n$  of plane trees with degree constraint  $\Omega$  that the dominant singularity of  $y(z)$  implicitly defined by (41b) is  $z = 1/e$ , where we have the expansion  $y(z) = 1 - \sqrt{2}\sqrt{1-ez} + O(1-ez)$ . Hence,  $z = 1/e$  is also the dominant singularity of  $\log(1/(1-y(z)))$ , and we get directly

$$\log \frac{1}{1-y(z)} = \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1}{1-ez} - \frac{1}{2} \log 2 + O(\sqrt{1-ez}). \quad (43)$$

The approximation for  $\overline{C_m}$  follows by extracting coefficients from (43). The formula  $\overline{U_{m-1}} = (m+1)/2$  can be obtained by an analysis of the right-hand side of (42), or more directly by counting the number of probes needed for the  $m$  unsuccessful searches in a hash table with only one empty slot. This completes the proof of Theorem 12. ■

The length of the maximum search per table for fixed  $\alpha < 1$  is shown in [Pittel 1987a] to be  $\Theta(\log n)$ , on the average. Amble and Knuth [1974] consider a variation of linear probing, called *ordered hashing*, in which each cluster of elements in the table is kept in the order that would occur if the elements were inserted in increasing order by element value. Elements are relocated within a cluster, if necessary, during an insertion. The average number of probes per unsuccessful search decreases to  $\overline{C_{n-1}}$ .

Linear probing can also be used for sorting, in a way similar to distribution sort described earlier, except that the elements are stored in a linear probing hash table rather than in buckets. The  $n$  elements in the range  $[a, b)$  are inserted into the table using the hash function  $h_1(x) = \lfloor (x-a)/(x-b) \rfloor$ . The elements are then compacted and sorted via insertion sort. The hash table size  $m$  should be chosen to be somewhat larger than  $n$  (say,  $n/m \approx 0.8$ ), so that insertion times for linear probing are fast. A related sorting method described in [Gonnet and Munro 1981] uses ordered hashing to keep the elements in sorted order, and thus the final insertion sort is not needed.

## 6. Dynamic Algorithms

In this section we study performance measures that reflect the dynamic performance of a data structure over an interval of time, during which several operations may occur. In Section 6.1, we consider priority queue algorithms and analyze their performance integrated over a sequence of operations. The techniques apply to other data structures as well, including dictionaries, lists, stacks, and symbol tables. In Section 6.2 we analyze the maximum size attained by a data structure over time, which has important applications to preallocating resources. We conclude in Section 6.3 with the probabilistic analysis of union-find algorithms.

### 6.1. Integrated Cost and the History Model

Dynamic data structures such as lists, search trees, and heap-ordered trees can be analyzed in a dynamic context under the effect of *sequences of operations*. Knuth [1977] considers various models of what it means for deletions to “preserve randomness,” and this has been applied to the study of various data structures (for example, see [Vitter and Chen, 1987]). Françon [1978] proposed a model called the “history model” which amounts to analyzing dynamic structures under all possible evolutions up to order-isomorphism. Using combinatorial interpretations of continued fractions and orthogonal polynomials [Flajolet 1980], several data structures, including dictionaries, priority queues, lists, stacks, and symbol tables, can be analyzed under this model [Flajolet, Françon, and Vuillemin 1980]. In this section, we shall present an overview of the theory, with special emphasis on priority queues.

A priority queue (see Section 4.2) supports the operations of inserting an element  $x$  into the queue (which we denote by  $I(x)$ ) and deletion of the minimum element (which we denote by  $D$ ). An example of a particular sequence of operations is

$$s = I(3.1) I(1.7) I(2.9) I(3.7) D D I(3.4). \quad (1)$$

Such a sequence  $s$  consists of a *schema*  $IIIIDDI$ , from which we see that  $s$  causes the queue size to increase by 3. If we restrict attention to structures that operate by comparison between elements, the effect of  $s$  on an initially empty queue is fully characterized by the following information: The second operation  $I(1.7)$  inserts an element smaller than the first, the third operation  $I(2.9)$  inserts an element that falls in between the two previous ones, and so on. We define the *history* associated with a sequence  $s$  to consist of the schema of  $s$  in which each operation is labeled by the *rank* of the element on which it operates (relative to the current state of the structure). If we make the convention that ranks are numbered starting at 0, then all delete minimum operations must be labeled by 0, and each insert is labeled between 0 and  $k$ , where  $k$  is the size of the priority queue at the time of the insert. The history associated with (1) is

$$I_0 I_0 I_1 I_3 D_0 D_0 I_1. \quad (2)$$

We let  $\mathcal{H}$  denote the set of all histories containing as many inserts as delete minimum operations, and we let  $\mathcal{H}_n$  be the subset of those that have length  $n$ . We define  $h_n = |\mathcal{H}_n|$  and  $h(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} h_n z^n$ .

THEOREM 1. *The OGF of priority queue histories has the continued fraction expansion*

$$h(z) = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1 \cdot z^2}{1 - \frac{2 \cdot z^2}{1 - \frac{3 \cdot z^2}{1 - \frac{4 \cdot z^2}{\dots}}}}}. \quad (3)$$

Theorem 1 is a special case of a general theorem of [Flajolet 1980] that expresses generating functions of labeled schemas in terms of continued fractions. Another special case is the enumeration of plane trees, given in Section 4.1.

Returning to priority queue histories, from a classical theorem of Gauss (concerning the continued fraction expansion of quotients of hypergeometric functions) applied to continued fraction (3), we find

$$h_{2n} = 1 \times 3 \times 5 \times \dots \times (2n - 1),$$

with  $h_{2n+1} = 0$ . Thus the set of histories has an explicit and simple counting expression. Let us define the *height* of a history to be the maximum size that the priority queue attains over the course of the operations. From the same theory, it follows that the OGF  $h^{[k]}(z)$  for histories with height bounded by an integer  $k$  is the  $k$ th convergent of (3):

$$h^{[k]}(z) = \frac{P_k(z)}{Q_k(z)}, \quad (4)$$

where  $P_k$  and  $Q_k$  are closely related to Hermite polynomials. From (3) and (4), it is possible to determine generating functions for extended sets of histories (such as the set of histories  $\mathcal{H}^{(k)}$  that start at size 0 and end at size  $k$ ) and then to find the number of times a given operation is performed on a priority queue structure of size  $k$  in the course of all histories of  $\mathcal{H}_n$ . The expressions involve the continued fraction  $h(z)$  in (3) and its convergents given in (4). From there, for a given priority queue structure, we can compute the *integrated cost*  $\overline{K}_n$  defined as the expected cost of a random history in  $\mathcal{H}_n$ : If  $\overline{CI}_k$  (respectively,  $\overline{CD}_k$ ) is the individual expected cost of an insert (respectively, delete minimum) operation on the priority queue structure when it has size  $k$ , then we have

$$\overline{K}_n = \frac{1}{h_n} \sum_k (\overline{CI}_k \cdot NI_{n,k} + \overline{CD}_k \cdot ND_{n,k}), \quad (5)$$

where  $NI_{n,k}$  (respectively,  $ND_{n,k}$ ) is the number of times operation insert (respectively, delete minimum) occurs at size  $k$  inside all histories in  $\mathcal{H}_n$ . Manipulations with EGFs make it possible to express the final result in simple form. For instance, we have the following two EGFs of histories  $\mathcal{H}$  with a simple expression:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} h_n \frac{z^n}{n!} = e^{z^2/2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} h_{2n} \frac{z^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-2z}}.$$

The main theorem is that the following two GFs

$$C(x) = \sum_{k \geq 0} (\overline{CI_k} + \overline{CD_{k+1}}) x^k \quad \text{and} \quad K(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \overline{K_{2n}} h_{2n} \frac{z^n}{n!}, \quad (6)$$

where  $C(x)$  is an OGF of individual costs and  $K(z)$  is a modified EGF of integrated costs (after normalization by  $h_n$ ), are closely related:

**THEOREM 2.** *The GFs  $C(x)$  and  $K(z)$  defined above satisfy*

$$K(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-2z}} C\left(\frac{z}{1-z}\right). \quad (7)$$

If we plug into (7) the OGF  $C(x)$  corresponding to a particular implementation of priority queues, and then extract coefficients, we get the integrated cost for that implementation. For instance, for histories of length  $2n$  for sorted lists (SL) and binary search trees (BST), we have

$$\overline{K_{2n}^{\text{SL}}} = \frac{n(n+5)}{6} \quad \text{and} \quad \overline{K_{2n}^{\text{BST}}} = n \log n + O(n). \quad (8)$$

A variety of other dynamic data structures, including dictionaries, lists, stacks, and symbol tables, can be analyzed under the history model with these techniques. Each data type is associated with a continued fraction of the form (3), a class of orthogonal polynomials (such as Laguerre, Meixner, Chebyshev, and Poisson-Charlier) related to (4), and finally a transformation analogous to (6) that describes the transition from a GF of individual costs to the corresponding GF of integrated costs and that is usually expressed as an integral transform.

## 6.2. Size of Dynamic Data Structures

We can model the effect of insertions and deletions upon the size of a dynamic data structure by regarding the  $i$ th element as being a subinterval  $[s_i, t_i]$  of the unit interval; the  $i$ th element is “born” at time  $s_i$ , “dies” at time  $t_i$ , and is “living” when  $t \in [s_i, t_i]$ . At time  $t$ , the data structure must store the elements that are “living” at time  $t$ .

It is natural to think of the data structure as a statistical queue, as far as size is concerned. Let us denote the number of living elements at time  $t$  by  $Size(t)$ . If we think of the elements as horizontal intervals, then  $Size(t)$  is just the number of intervals “cut” by the vertical line at position  $t$ . In many applications, such as in VLSI artwork analysis, for example, the number of living elements at any given time tends to be the square root of the total number of elements; thus for purposes of storage efficiency the data structure should expunge dead elements.

In the *hashing with lazy deletion* (HwLD) data structure, we assume that each element has a unique key. The data structure supports dynamic searching of elements by key value, which is useful in several applications. The elements are stored in a hash table of  $H$  buckets, based upon the hash addresses of their keys. Typically separate chaining is used.

The distinguishing feature of HwLD is that an element is not deleted as soon as it dies; the “lazy deletion” strategy deletes a dead element only when a later insertion accesses the same bucket. The number  $H$  of buckets is chosen so that the expected number of elements per bucket is small. HwLD is thus more time-efficient than doing “vigilant-deletion,” at a cost of storing some dead elements.

**Expected Queue Sizes.** We define  $Use(t)$  to be the number of elements in the HwLD data structure at time  $t$ ; that is,  $Use(t) = Size(t) + Waste(t)$ , where  $Waste(t)$  is the number of dead elements stored in the data structure at time  $t$ . Let us consider the M/M/ $\infty$  queueing model, in which the births form a Poisson process, and the lifespans of the intervals are independently and exponentially distributed.

**THEOREM 3** [Feller 1968], [Van Wyk and Vitter 1986]. *In the stationary M/M/ $\infty$  model, both  $Size$  and  $Use - H$  are identically Poisson distributed with mean  $\lambda/\mu$ , where  $\lambda$  is the birth rate of the intervals and  $1/\mu$  is the average lifetime per element.*

**PROOF.** We define the notation  $p_{m,n}(t) = \Pr\{Size(t) = m, Waste(t) = n\}$  for  $m, n \geq 0$ , and  $p_{m,n}(t) = 0$  otherwise. In the M/M/ $\infty$  model, we have

$$\begin{aligned} p_{m,n}(t + \Delta t) &= ((1 - \lambda \Delta t)(e^{-\mu \Delta t})^m + o(\Delta t)) p_{m,n}(t) \\ &\quad + ((1 - \lambda \Delta t)(m + 1)(1 - e^{-\mu \Delta t})(e^{-\mu \Delta t})^m + o(\Delta t)) p_{m+1,n-1}(t) \\ &\quad + \delta_{n=0}(\lambda \Delta t + o(\Delta t)) \sum_{j \geq 0} p_{m-1,j}(t) + o(\Delta t). \end{aligned} \quad (9a)$$

By expanding the exponential terms in (9a) and rearranging, and letting  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ , we get

$$p'_{m,n}(t) = (-\lambda - m\mu) p_{m,n}(t) + (m + 1)\mu p_{m+1,n-1}(t) + \delta_{n=0}\lambda \sum_{j \geq 0} p_{m-1,j}(t). \quad (9b)$$

In the stationary model, the probabilities  $p_{m,n}(t)$  are independent of  $t$ , and thus the left-hand side of (9b) is 0. For notational simplicity we shall drop the dependence upon  $t$ . The rest of the derivation proceeds by considering the multidimensional OGF  $P(z, w) = \sum_{m,n} p_{m,n} z^m w^n$ . Equation (9b) becomes

$$\mu(z - w) \frac{\partial P(z, w)}{\partial z} = -\lambda P(z, w) + \lambda z P(z, 1). \quad (9c)$$

This provides us with the distribution of  $Size$ :

$$\Pr\{Size = m\} = [z^m]P(z, 1) = [z^m]e^{(z-1)\lambda/\mu} = \frac{(\lambda/\mu)^m}{m!} e^{\lambda/\mu}. \quad (10)$$

To find the distribution of  $Use$ , we replace  $w$  by  $z$  in (9c), which causes the left-hand-side of (9c) to become 0. We get

$$\Pr\{Use = k\} = [z^k]P(z, z) = [z^k]zP(z, 1). \quad (11)$$

The rest follows from (10). ■

**Maximum Queue Size.** A more interesting statistic, which has direct application to matters of storage preallocation, is the maximum values of  $Size(t)$  and  $Use(t)$  as the time  $t$  varies over the entire unit interval.

Orthogonal polynomials arise in an interesting way when considering the more general model of a stationary birth-and-death process, which is a Markov process in which transitions from level  $k$  are allowed only to levels  $k + 1$  and  $k - 1$ . The infinitesimal birth and death rates at level  $k$  are denoted by  $\lambda_k$  and  $\mu_k$ :

$$\Pr\{Size(t + \Delta t) = j \mid Size(t) = k\} = \begin{cases} \lambda_k \Delta t + o(\Delta t), & \text{if } j = k + 1; \\ \mu_k \Delta t + o(\Delta t), & \text{if } j = k - 1; \\ o(\Delta t), & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

For the special case of the M/M/ $\infty$  model, we have  $\lambda_0 = \lambda_1 = \dots = \lambda$  and  $\mu_k = k\mu$ ; for the M/M/1 model, we have  $\lambda_0 = \lambda_1 = \dots = \lambda$  and  $\mu_0 = \mu_1 = \dots = \mu$ .

**THEOREM 4** [Mathieu and Vitter 1988]. *The distribution of  $\max_{0 \leq t \leq 1} \{Size(t)\}$  can be expressed simply in terms of Chebyshev polynomials (for the M/M/1 process) and Poisson-Charlier polynomials (for the M/M/ $\infty$  process). For several types of linear birth-and-death processes, of the form  $\lambda_k = \alpha k + \beta$ ,  $\mu_k = \gamma k + \delta$ ,  $Q_j(x)$  can be expressed in terms of either Laguerre polynomials or Meixner polynomials of the second kind.*

It is interesting to note that orthogonal polynomials arose in a similar way in Section 6.1. The formulæ referred to in Theorem 4 can be used to calculate the distributions of  $\max_{0 \leq t \leq 1} \{Size(t)\}$  numerically, but they do not seem to yield asymptotics directly. Instead we rely upon a different approach:

**THEOREM 5** [Kenyon-Mathieu and Vitter 1989]. *In the stationary M/M/ $\infty$  probabilistic model, assuming either that  $\mu \rightarrow 0$  or that  $\mu = \Omega(1)$  and  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ , we have*

$$\mathbf{E}\left\{\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Size(t)\}\right\} \sim \begin{cases} \frac{\lambda}{\mu} & \text{if } f(\lambda, \mu) \rightarrow 0; \\ d \frac{\lambda}{\mu} & \text{if } f(\lambda, \mu) \rightarrow c; \\ \frac{f(\lambda)}{\ln f(\lambda)} \frac{\lambda}{\mu} & \text{if } f(\lambda, \mu) \rightarrow \infty, \end{cases} \quad (12)$$

where  $f(\lambda, \mu) = (\ln \lambda) / \frac{\lambda}{\mu}$  and the constant  $d$  is defined implicitly from the constant  $c$  by  $d \ln d - d = c - 1$ . In the first case  $\ln \lambda = o(\lambda/\mu)$ , we also have

$$\mathbf{E}\left\{\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Use(t)\}\right\} \sim \frac{\lambda}{\mu} + H. \quad (13)$$

When  $\ln \lambda = o(\lambda/\mu)$ , Theorem 5 says that the expected maximum value of  $Size(t)$  (respectively,  $Use(t)$ ) is asymptotically equal to the maximum of its expected value. For example, in VLSI artwork applications, we might have  $\lambda = n$ ,  $\mu = \sqrt{n}$ , so that the average number of living elements at any given time is  $\lambda/\mu = \sqrt{n}$ ; by Theorem 5, the expected maximum data structure size is asymptotically the same. Kenyon-Mathieu and

Vitter [1989] also study the expected maximum under history models as in Section 6.1 and under other probabilistic models.

It is no accident that the theorem is structurally similar to Theorem 5.6 for maximum bucket occupancy. The quantity  $\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Size(t)\}$  can be regarded as the continuous counterpart of the maximum bucket occupancy. The proof below makes use of that relation.

PROOF SKETCH. For brevity, we consider only the analysis of  $\mathbf{E}\{\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Size(t)\}\}$ . We shall concentrate primarily on case 1, in which  $\ln \lambda = o(\lambda/\mu)$ . The lower bound follows immediately by Theorem 3:

$$\mathbf{E}\left\{\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Size(t)\}\right\} \geq \mathbf{E}\{Size(0)\} = \frac{\lambda}{\mu}.$$

We get the desired upper bound by looking at a the following discretized version of the problem: Let us consider a hash table with  $m = g\mu$  slots, where  $g\mu$  is an integer and  $g \rightarrow \infty$  very slowly, as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ . The  $j$ th slot, for  $1 \leq j \leq g\mu$ , represents the time interval  $((j-1)/(g\mu), j/(g\mu)]$ . For each element we place an entry into each slot whose associated time interval intersects the element's lifetime. If we define  $N(j)$  to be the number of elements in slot  $j$ , we get the following upper bound:

$$\max_{0 \leq t \leq 1} \{Size(t)\} \leq \max_{1 \leq j \leq g\mu} \{N(j)\}.$$

The slot occupancies  $N(j)$  are Poisson distributed with mean  $\frac{\lambda}{\mu}(1 + \frac{1}{g})$ . However they are not independent, so our analysis of maximum bucket occupancy in Theorem 5.6 does not apply to this case. The main point of the proof is showing that the lack of independence does not significantly alter the expected maximum:

$$\mathbf{E}\left\{\max_{1 \leq j \leq g\mu} \{N(j)\}\right\} \sim \frac{\lambda}{\mu}.$$

This gives us the desired upper bound, which completes the proof for case 1. The formula for  $\mathbf{E}\{\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Use(t)\}\}$  can be derived in the same way.

This approach when applied to cases 2 and 3 of Theorem 5 gives upper bounds on  $\mathbf{E}\{\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Size(t)\}\}$  that are off by a factor of 2. To get asymptotic bounds, different techniques are used, involving probabilistic arguments that the distribution of  $\max_{t \in [0,1]} \{Size(t)\}$  is peaked in some “central region” about the mean. The technique is similar in spirit to those used in Section 5.1 for the analyses of extendible hashing, maximum bucket occupancy, and coalesced hashing. ■

The probabilistic analysis of maximum size has also been successfully carried out for a variety of combinatorial data structures, such as dictionaries, linear lists, priority queues, and symbol tables, using the history model discussed in Section 6.1.

### 6.3. Set Union-Find Algorithms

The *set union-find* data type is useful in several computer applications, such as computing minimum spanning trees, testing equivalence of finite state machines, performing unification in logic programming and theorem proving, and handling COMMON blocks in FORTRAN compilers. The operation  $union(x, y)$  merges the equivalence classes (or simply *components*) containing  $x$  and  $y$  and chooses a unique “representative” element for the combined component. Operation  $find(x)$  returns the representative of  $x$ ’s component, and  $make\_set(x)$  creates a singleton component  $\{x\}$  with representative  $x$ .

Union-find algorithms have been studied extensively in terms of worst-case and amortized performance. Tarjan and van Leeuwen [1984] give matching upper and lower amortized bounds of  $\Theta(n + m\alpha(m + n, n))$  for the problem, where  $n$  is the number of makeset operations,  $m$  is the number of finds, and  $\alpha(a, b)$  denotes a functional inverse of Ackermann’s function. The lower bound holds in a separable pointer machine model, and the upper bound is achieved by the well-known tree data structure that does weighted merges and path compression. A more extensive discussion appears in [Mehlhorn and Tsakalidis 1989].

In this section we study the average-case running time of more simple-minded algorithms, called “quick find” (QF) and “quick find weighted” (QFW). The data structure consists of an array called *rep*, with one slot per element;  $rep[x]$  is the representative for element  $x$ . Each find can thus be done in constant time. In addition, the elements in each component are linked together in a list. In the QF algorithm,  $union(x, y)$  is implemented by setting  $rep[z] := rep[x]$ , for all  $z$  in  $y$ ’s component. The QFW algorithm is the same, except that when  $x$ ’s component is smaller than  $y$ ’s, we take the quicker route and set  $rep[z] := rep[y]$ , for all  $z$  in  $x$ ’s component. An auxiliary array is used to keep track of the size of each component.

Since all finds take constant time, we shall confine our attention to the union operations. We consider  $n - 1$  unions performed on a set of  $n$  elements, so that we end up with a single component of size  $n$ . Our performance measure, which we denote by  $T_n^{QF}$  and  $T_n^{QFW}$ , is the total number of updates to slots of *rep* made during the unions. We consider three models of “random” input.

**Random Graph Model.** Probably the most realistic model was proposed in [Yao 1976], based upon the random graph model of [Erdős and Rényi 1960]. Each of the  $\binom{n}{2}$  undirected edges between  $n$  vertices “fires” independently, governed by a Poisson process. Each order of firings is thus equally likely. When an edge  $\{x, y\}$  fires, we execute  $union(x, y)$  if  $x$  and  $y$  are in different components.

**THEOREM 6** [Knuth and Schönhage 1978], [Bollobás and Simon 1985]. *The average number of updates done by QF and QFW in the random graph model is*

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{T_n^{QF}} &= \frac{n^2}{8} + o(n(\log n)^2); \\ \overline{T_n^{QFW}} &= cn + o(n/\log n), \quad \text{where } c = 2.0847\dots \end{aligned}$$

We shall restrict ourselves to showing that  $\overline{T_n^{QF}} \sim n^2/8$  and  $\overline{T_n^{QFW}} = O(n)$  using the derivation from [Knuth and Schönhage 1978]. The techniques in [Bollobás and Simon 1985]

are needed to determine the coefficient  $c$  and to get better bounds on the second-order terms. In addition, [Bollobás and Simon 1985] consider sequences of fewer than  $n$  unions. They show that, on the average, QF performs  $(\frac{1}{2} - \epsilon)n$  unions in  $O(n \log n)$  time, and QFW does  $k$  unions in  $O(k)$  time, for any  $k \leq n$ .

**PROOF SKETCH.** The proof is based upon the intuition from [Erdős and Renyi, 1959] that with probability  $1 - O(1/\log n)$  a random graph on  $n$  vertices with  $\frac{1}{2}n \log n + \frac{1}{2}cn$  edges, where  $c$  is a constant, consists of one giant connected component of size  $\geq n - \log \log n$  and a set of isolated vertices. The graph is connected with probability  $e^{-e^{-c}}$ . In terms of union operations, it is very likely that the last few unions joined the giant component to singleton components; the cost for each such union would be  $O(n)$  for QF and  $O(1)$  for QFW. The proof of Theorem 6 consists in showing that this behavior extends over the entire sequence of unions.

For QFW, we find by recurrences and asymptotic approximations that

$$E_{n,k,m} = O\left(\frac{n}{k^{3/2}m^{3/2}(k+m)^{3/2}}\right), \quad \text{for } k, m < n^{2/3} \text{ and } k, m > n^{2/3}, \quad (14)$$

where  $E_{n,k,m}$  is the expected number of times a component of size  $k$  is merged with one of size  $m$ . Hence,

$$\overline{T_n^{\text{QFW}}} = \sum_{1 \leq k, m < n} \min\{k, m\} E_{n,k,m} \leq \sum_{1 \leq k \leq m < n} k(E_{n,k,m} + E_{n,m,k}). \quad (15)$$

For the portion of the sum to which (14) applies, we can bound (15) by  $O(n)$ . For the rest of the range, in which  $1 \leq k \leq n^{2/3} \leq m < n$ , the sum is bounded by  $n$ , since each element can be merged at most once from a component of size  $< n^{2/3}$  into one of size  $\geq n^{2/3}$ . The analysis of QF is similar. ■

Several combinatorial algorithms have been designed and analyzed using the random graph model. For example, Babai, Erdős, and Selkow [1980] give an algorithm for testing graph isomorphism that runs in  $O(n^2)$  average time, though all known algorithms require exponential time in the worst case.

**Random Spanning Tree Model.** Each sequence of union operations corresponds to a “union tree,” in which the directed edge  $\langle x, y \rangle$  means that the component with representative  $y$  is merged into the component with representative  $x$ . In the random spanning tree model, all possible union trees are equally likely; there are  $n^{n-2}$  possible unoriented trees and  $(n-1)!$  firing orders of the edges in each tree.

**THEOREM 7** [Yao 1976], [Knuth and Schönhage 1978]. *The average number of updates done by QF and QFW in the random spanning tree model is*

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{T_n^{\text{QF}}} &= \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{8}} n^{3/2} + O(n \log n); \\ \overline{T_n^{\text{QFW}}} &= \frac{1}{\pi} n \log n + O(n). \end{aligned}$$

PROOF SKETCH. An admissibility argument similar to those in Section 4 allows us to compute the probability  $p_{n,k}$  that the last union does a merge of components of sizes  $k$  and  $n - k$ :

$$p_{n,k} = \frac{1}{2(n-1)} \binom{n}{k} \left(\frac{k}{n}\right)^{k-1} \left(\frac{n-k}{n}\right)^{n-k-1}. \quad (16)$$

And it is easy to show that

$$\overline{T}_n = c_n + 2 \sum_{0 < k < n} p_{n,k} \overline{T}_k, \quad (17)$$

where  $c_n = \sum_{0 < k < n} k p_{n,k}$  for QF and  $c_n = \sum_{0 < k < n} \min\{k, n - k\} p_{n,k}$  for QFW. By symmetry we have  $\sum_{0 < k < n} k p_{n,k} = n/2$ , and arguments similar to those used for Theorem 6 show that  $\sum_{0 < k < n} \min\{k, n - k\} p_{n,k} = (2n/\pi)^{1/2} + O(1)$ . Recurrence (17) is in a special linear form that allows us to solve it “by repertoire”: the solution of (17) for  $c_n = a_n + b_n$  is the sum of the solutions for  $c_n = a_n$  and for  $c_n = b_n$ . Hence, if we can find a “basis” of different  $c_n$  for which (17) can be solved easily, then we can solve (17) for QF and QFW by linear combinations of the basis functions. It turns out that the basis in our case is the set of  $Q$ -functions  $Q_{\{1/k^r\}}(n)$ , for  $r = -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , which we studied in connection with linear probing in Section 5.2. ■

**Random Components Model.** In the simplest model, and also the least realistic, we assume that at any given time each pair of existing components is equally likely to be merged next. The union tree in this framework is nothing more than a random binary search tree, which we studied extensively in Section 4.2. Admissibility arguments lead directly to the following result:

**THEOREM 8** [Doyle and Rivest 1976]. *The average number of updates done by QF and QFW in the random components model is*

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{T}_n^{\text{QF}} &= n(H_n - 1) = n \log n + O(n); \\ \overline{T}_n^{\text{QFW}} &= nH_n - \frac{1}{2}nH_{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} - \lceil n/2 \rceil = \frac{1}{2}n \log n + O(n). \end{aligned}$$

## Acknowledgment

We thank Don Knuth for several helpful comments and suggestions.

## References

- A. AGGARWAL AND J. S. VITTER [1988]. The Input/Output Complexity of Sorting and Related Problems,” *Communications of the ACM* **31**(9), September 1988, 1116–1127.
- O. AMBLE AND D. E. KNUTH [1974]. “Ordered Hash Tables,” *The Computer Journal* **17**(2), May 1974, 135–142.
- M. AJTAI, J. KOMLÓS, AND E. SZEMERÉDI [1983]. “An  $O(n \log n)$  Sorting Network,” *Proceedings of the 15th Annual Symposium on Theory of Computer Science*, Boston, May 1983, 1–9.
- L. BABAI, P. ERDÖS, AND S. M. SELKOW [1980]. “Random Graph Isomorphisms,” *SIAM Journal on Computing* **9**, 628–635.
- K. E. BATCHER [1968]. “Sorting Networks and Their Applications,” *Proceedings of the AFIPS Spring Joint Computer Conference* **32**, 1968, 307–314.
- E. BENDER [1973]. “Central and Local Limit Theorems Applied to Asymptotic Enumeration,” *Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series A* **15**, 1973, 91–111.
- E. BENDER [1974]. “Asymptotic Methods in Enumeration,” *SIAM Review* **16**, 1974, 485–515.
- C. BENDER AND S. ORSZAG [1978]. *Advanced Mathematical Methods for Scientists and Engineers*. McGraw-Hill, 1978.
- J. BERSTEL AND L. BOASSON [1989]. “Context-Free Languages,” in this handbook.
- P. BILLINGSLEY [1986]. *Probability and Measure*, Academic Press, 1986.
- B. BOLLOBÁS [1985]. *Random Graphs*, Academic Press, New York 1985.
- B. BOLLOBÁS AND I. SIMON [1985]. “On the Expected Behavior of Disjoint Set Union Algorithms,” *Proceedings of the 17th Annual Symposium on Theory of Computing*, Providence, R. I., May 1985, 224–231.
- M. R. BROWN [1979]. “A Partial Analysis of Random Height-Balanced Trees,” *SIAM Journal on Computing* **8**(1), February 1979, 33–41.
- W. H. BURGE [1972]. “An Analysis of a Tree Sorting Method and Some Properties of a Set of Trees,” *Proceedings of the 1st USA–Japan Computer Conference*, 1972, 372–378.
- E. R. CANFIELD [1977]. “Central and Local Limit Theorems for Coefficients of Binomial Type,” *Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series A* **23**, 1977, 275–290.
- N. CHOMSKY AND M. P. SCHÜTZENBERGER [1963]. “The Algebraic Theory of Context-Free Languages,” *Computer Programming and Formal Languages*, edited by P. Braffort and D. Hirschberg, North-Holland, 1963, 118–161.
- D. W. CLARK [1979]. “Measurements of Dynamic List Structure Use in Lisp,” *IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering* **SE–5**(1), January 1979, 51–59.
- L. COMTET [1969]. “Calcul pratique des coefficients de Taylor d’une fonction algébrique,” *L’Enseignement Mathématique* **10**, 1969, 267–270.
- L. COMTET [1974]. *Advanced Combinatorics*. Reidel, Dordrecht, 1974.

- R. CYPHER [1989]. "A Lower Bound on the Size of Shellsort Sorting Networks," *Proceedings of the 1st Annual ACM Symposium on Parallel Algorithms and Architectures*, Santa Fe, NM, June 1989, 58–63.
- N. G. DE BRUIJN [1981]. *Asymptotic Methods in Analysis*. Dover, New York, 1981.
- N. G. DE BRUIJN, D. E. KNUTH, AND S. O. RICE [1972]. "The Average Height of Planted Plane Trees," in *Graph Theory and Computing*, edited by R.-C. Read, Academic Press, New York, 1972, 15–22.
- L. DEVROYE [1986a]. "A Note on the Height of Binary Search Trees," *Journal of the ACM* **33**, 1986, 489–498.
- L. DEVROYE [1986b]. *Lecture Notes on Bucket Algorithms*, Birkhäuser, Boston, 1986.
- G. DOETSCH [1955]. *Handbuch der Laplace Transformation*. Volumes 1–3. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 1955.
- J. DOYLE AND R. L. RIVEST [1976]. "Linear Expected Time of a Simple Union-Find Algorithm," *Information Processing Letters* **5**, 1976, 146–148.
- B. ĐURIAN [1986]. "Quicksort without a Stack," *Proceedings of the 12th Annual Symposium on Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science, Lecture Notes in Computer Science* **233**, 1986, 283–289.
- P. ERDŐS AND A. RÉNYI [1960]. "On the Evolution of Random Graphs," *Publ. of the Math. Institute of the Hungarian Academy of Sciences* **5**, 1960, 17–61.
- R. FAGIN, J. NIEVERGELT, N. PIPPENGER, AND H. R. STRONG [1979]. "Extendible Hashing—A Fast Access Method for Dynamic Files," *ACM Transactions on Database Systems* **4**(3), September 1979, 315–344.
- W. FELLER [1968]. *An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications*, Volume 1, Wiley, New York, third edition 1968.
- W. FELLER [1971]. *An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications*, Volume 2, Wiley, New York, second edition 1971.
- PH. FLAJOLET [1980]. "Combinatorial Aspects of Continued Fractions," *Discrete Mathematics* **32**, 1980, 125–161.
- PH. FLAJOLET [1981]. *Analyse d'algorithmes de manipulation d'arbres et de fichiers*, in *Cahiers du BURO* **34–35**, 1981, 1–209.
- PH. FLAJOLET [1983]. "On the Performance Evaluation of Extendible Hashing and Trie Searching," *Acta Informatica* **20**, 1983, 345–369.
- PH. FLAJOLET [1987]. "Analytic Models and Ambiguity of Context-Free Languages," *Theoretical Computer Science* **49**, 1987.
- PH. FLAJOLET [1988]. "Mathematical Methods in the Analysis of Algorithms and Data Structures," *Trends in Theoretical Computer Science*, edited by E. Börger, Computer Science Press, 1988, 225–304.
- PH. FLAJOLET, J. FRANÇON, AND J. VUILLEMIN [1980]. "Sequence of Operations Analysis for Dynamic Data Structures," *Journal of Algorithms* **1**(2), 1980, 111–141.
- PH. FLAJOLET, G. GONNET, C. PUECH, AND M. ROBSON [1989]. "Analytic Variations on Quad Trees," draft, 1989.

- PH. FLAJOLET AND A. M. ODLYZKO [1982]. "The Average Height of Binary Trees and Other Simple Trees," *J. Computer and System Sciences* **25**, 1982, 171-213.
- PH. FLAJOLET AND A. M. ODLYZKO [1989]. "Singularity Analysis of Generating Functions," *SIAM Journal on Discrete Mathematics* **3**(1), 1990.
- PH. FLAJOLET AND C. PUECH [1986] "Partial Match Retrieval of Multidimensional Data," *Journal of the ACM* **33**(2), April 1986, 371-407. 1986.
- PH. FLAJOLET, J.-C. RAOULT, AND J. VUILLEMIN [1979]. "The Number of Registers Required to Evaluate Arithmetic Expressions," *Theoretical Computer Science* **9**, 1979, 99-125.
- PH. FLAJOLET, M. RÉGNIER AND R. SEDGEWICK [1985]. "Some Uses of the Mellin Integral Transform in the Analysis of Algorithms," *Combinatorics on Words*, Springer NATO ASI Series F, Volume 12, Berlin, 1985.
- PH. FLAJOLET, M. RÉGNIER AND D. SOTTEAU [1985]. "Algebraic Methods for Trie Statistics," *Annals of Discrete Mathematics* **25**, 1985, 145-188.
- PH. FLAJOLET AND R. SEDGEWICK [1986]. "Digital Search Trees Revisited," *SIAM Journal on Computing* **15**(3), August 1986, 748-767.
- PH. FLAJOLET, P. SIPALA, AND J.-M. STEYAERT [1987]. "Analytic Variations on the Common Subexpression Problem," *Proceedings of the 17th Annual International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP)*, Warwick, England, July 1990. Published in Lecture Notes in Computer Science, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- PH. FLAJOLET AND J.-M. STEYAERT [1987]. "A Complexity Calculus for Recursive Tree Algorithms," *Mathematical Systems Theory* **19**, 1987, 301-331.
- D. FOATA [1974]. *La série génératrice exponentielle dans les problèmes d'énumération*, Series S. M. S., Montreal University Press, 1974.
- J. FRANÇON [1978]. "Histoire de fichiers," *RAIRO Inform. Theor.* **12**, 1978, 49-67.
- J. FRANÇON, G. VIENNOT, AND J. VUILLEMIN [1978]. "Description and Analysis of an Efficient Priority Queue Representation," *Proceedings of the 19th Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science*, Ann Arbor, October 1978, 1-7.
- G. H. GONNET [1981]. "Expected Length of the Longest Probe Sequence in Hash Code Searching," *Journal of the ACM* **28**(2), April 1981, 289-304.
- G. H. GONNET [1984] *Handbook of Algorithms and Data Structures*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, 1984.
- G. H. GONNET AND J. I. MUNRO [1981]. "A Linear Probing Sort and its Analysis," *Proceedings of the 13th Annual Symposium on Theory of Computing*, Milwaukee, WI, May 1981, 90-95.
- G. H. GONNET, L. D. ROGERS, AND A. GEORGE [1980]. "An Algorithmic and Complexity Analysis of Interpolation Search," *Acta Informatica* **13**(1), January 1980, 39-46.
- I. GOULDEN AND D. JACKSON [1983]. *Combinatorial Enumerations*. Wiley, New York, 1983.
- D. H. GREENE [1983]. "Labelled Formal Languages and Their Uses," Stanford University, Technical Report STAN-CS-83-982, 1983.

- D. H. GREENE AND D. E. KNUTH [1982]. *Mathematics for the Analysis of Algorithms*. Birkhäuser, Boston, second edition 1982.
- L. J. GUIBAS AND E. SZEMERÉDI [1978]. “The Analysis of Double Hashing,” *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* **16**(2), April 1978, 226–274.
- B. HARRIS AND L. SCHOENFELD [1968]. “Asymptotic Expansions for the Coefficients of Analytic Functions,” *Illinois J. Math.* **12**, 1968, 264–277.
- W. K. HAYMAN [1956]. “A Generalization of Stirling’s Formula,” *J. Reine und Angewandte Mathematik* **196**, 1956, 67–95.
- P. HENRICI [1974]. *Applied and Computational Complex Analysis*. Volume 1. Wiley, New York, 1974.
- P. HENRICI [1977]. *Applied and Computational Complex Analysis*. Volume 2. Wiley, New York, 1977.
- B.-C. HUANG AND D. E. KNUTH [1986]. “A One-Way, Stackless Quicksort Algorithm,” *BIT* **26**, 1986, 127–130.
- D. H. HUNT [1967]. Bachelor’s thesis, Princeton University, April 1967.
- J. M. INCERPI AND R. SEDGEWICK [1985]. “Improved Upper Bounds on Shellsort,” *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* **31**, 1985, 210–224.
- PH. JACQUET AND M. RÉGNIER [1986]. “Trie Partitioning Process: Limiting Distributions,” in *Proceedings of CAAP ’86, Lecture Notes in Computer Science* **214**, 1986, 196–210.
- PH. JACQUET AND M. RÉGNIER [1987]. “Normal Limiting Distribution of the Size of Tries,” in *Performance ’87, Proceedings of 13th International Symposium on Computer Performance*, Brussels, December 1987.
- R. KEMP [1979]. “The Average Number of Registers Needed to Evaluate a Binary Tree Optimally,” *Acta Informatica* **11**(4), 1979, 363–372.
- R. KEMP [1984]. *Fundamentals of the Average Case Analysis of Particular Algorithms*. Teubner-Wiley, Stuttgart, 1984.
- C. M. KENYON-MATHIEU AND J. S. VITTER [1989]. “General Methods for the Analysis of the Maximum Size of Data Structures,” *Proceedings of the 16th Annual International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP)*, Stresa, Italy, July 1989. Published in *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- P. KIRSCHENHOFER AND H. PRODINGER [1986]. “Some Further Results on Digital Search Trees,” *Proceedings of the 13th Annual International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP)*, Rennes, France, July 1986. Published in *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, Volume 226, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- P. KIRSCHENHOFER AND H. PRODINGER [1988]. “On Some Applications of Formulæ of Ramanujan in the Analysis of Algorithms,” preprint, 1988.
- D. E. KNUTH [1978]. “The Average Time for Carry Propagation,” *Indagationes Mathematicæ* **40**, 1978, 238–242.
- D. E. KNUTH [1973a]. *The Art of Computer Programming*. Volume 1: *Fundamental Algorithms*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, second edition 1973.

- D. E. KNUTH [1973b]. *The Art of Computer Programming*. Volume 3: *Sorting and Searching*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1973.
- D. E. KNUTH [1977]. "Deletions that Preserve Randomness," *IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering* **SE-3**, 1977, 351–359.
- D. E. KNUTH [1981]. *The Art of Computer Programming*. Volume 2: *Semi-Numerical Algorithms*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, second edition 1981.
- D. E. KNUTH AND A. SCHÖNHAGE [1978]. "The Expected Linearity of a Simple Equivalence Algorithm," *Theoretical Computer Science* **6**, 1978, 281–315.
- V. F. KOLCHIN, B. A. SEVAST'YANOV, AND V. P. CHISTYAKOV [1978]. *Random Allocations*. V. H. Winston & Sons, Washington, 1978.
- A. G. KONHEIM AND D. J. NEWMAN [1973]. "A Note on Growing Binary Trees," *Discrete Mathematics* **4**, 1973, 57–63.
- P.-A. LARSON [1978]. "Dynamic Hashing," *BIT* **20**(2), 1978, 184–201.
- E. E. LINDSTROM AND J. S. VITTER [1985]. "The Design and Analysis of BucketSort for Bubble Memory Secondary Storage," *IEEE Transactions on Computers* **C-34**(3), March 1985.
- G. LOUCHARD [1983]. "The Brownian Motion: a Neglected Tool for the Complexity Analysis of Sorted Table Manipulation," *RAIRO Theoretical Informatics* **17**, 1983, 365–385.
- G. S. LUEKER AND M. MOLODOWITCH [1988]. "More Analysis of Double Hashing," *Proceedings of the 20th Annual Symposium on Theory of Computing*, Chicago, IL, May 1988, 354–359.
- C. M. MATHIEU AND J. S. VITTER [1988]. "Maximum Queue Size and Hashing with Lazy Deletion," *Proceedings of the 20th Annual Symposium on the Interface of Computing Science and Statistics*, Reston, VA, April 1988, 743–748.
- K. MEHLHORN AND A. TSAKALIDIS [1989]. "Data Structures," in this handbook.
- A. MEIR AND J. W. MOON [1978]. "On the Altitude of Nodes in Random Trees," *Canadian Journal of Mathematics* **30**, 1978, 997–1015.
- M. H. NODINE AND J. S. VITTER [1990]. "Greed Sort: Optimal Sorting with Multiple Disks," Technical Report CS-90-04 Brown University, February 1990.
- A. M. ODLYZKO [1982]. "Periodic Oscillations of Coefficients of Power Series that Satisfy Functional Equations," *Advances in Math.* **44**, 1982, 180-205.
- A. M. ODLYZKO AND L. B. RICHMOND [1985]. "Asymptotic Expansions for the Coefficients of Analytic Generating Functions," *Æquationes Mathematicæ* **28**, 1985, 50-63.
- F. W. J. OLVER [1974]. *Asymptotics and Special Functions*, Academic Press, 1974.
- N. J. PIPPENGER [1989]. "Communication Networks," in this handbook.
- B. PITTEL [1986]. "Paths in a Random Digital Tree: Limiting Distributions," *Advances in Applied Probability* **18**, 1986, 139–155.
- B. PITTEL [1987a]. "Linear Probing: The Probable Largest Search Time Grows Logarithmically with the Number of Records," *Journal of Algorithms* **8**(2), June 1987, 236–249.
- B. PITTEL [1987b]. "On Probabilistic Analysis of a Coalesced Hashing Algorithm," *Annals of Probability* **15**(2), July 1987.

- G. PÓLYA [1937]. “Kombinatorische Anzahlbestimmungen für Gruppen, Graphen und chemische Verbindungen,” *Acta Mathematica* **68**, 1937, 145–254. Translated in G. Pólya and R. C. Read, *Combinatorial Enumeration of Groups, Graphs, and Chemical Compounds*, Springer Verlag, New York, 1987.
- P. W. PURDOM AND C. A. BROWN [1985]. *The Analysis of Algorithms*. Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New-York, 1985.
- M. RÉGNIER [1981]. “On the Average Height of Trees in Digital Search and Dynamic Hashing,” *Information Processing Letters* **13**, 1981, 64–66.
- M. RÉGNIER [1985]. “Analysis of Grid File Algorithms,” *BIT* **25**, 1985, 335–357.
- V. N. SACHKOV [1978]. *Verojatnosnie Metody v Kombinatornom Analize*, Nauka, Moscow, 1978.
- R. SEDGEWICK [1977a]. “Quicksort with Equal Keys,” *SIAM Journal on Computing* **6**(2), June 1977, 240–267.
- R. SEDGEWICK [1977b]. “The Analysis of Quicksort Programs,” *Acta Informatica* **7**, 1977, 327–355.
- R. SEDGEWICK [1978]. “Data Movement in Odd-Even Merging,” *SIAM Journal on Computing* **7**(3), August 1978, 239–272.
- R. SEDGEWICK [1983]. “Mathematical Analysis of Combinatorial Algorithms,” in *Probability Theory and Computer Science*, edited by G. Louchard and G. Latouche, Academic Press, London, 1983.
- R. SEDGEWICK [1988]. *Algorithms*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, 1988, second edition.
- D. L. SHELL [1959]. “A High-Speed Sorting Procedure,” *Communications of the ACM* **2**(7), July 1959, 30–32.
- J.-M. STEYAERT AND PH. FLAJOLET [1983]. “Patterns and Pattern-Matching in Trees: an Analysis,” *Information and Control* **58**, 1983, 19–58.
- R. E. TARJAN AND J. VAN LEEUWEN [1984]. “Worst-Case Analysis of Set Union Algorithms,” *Journal of the ACM* **31**(2), April 1984, 245–281.
- E. C. TITCHMARSH [1939]. *The Theory of Functions*, Oxford University Press, London, second edition 1939.
- C. J. VAN WYK AND J. S. VITTER [1986]. “The Complexity of Hashing with Lazy Deletion,” *Algorithmica* **1**(1), March 1986, 17–29.
- J. S. VITTER [1983]. “Analysis of the Search Performance of Coalesced Hashing,” *Journal of the ACM* **30**(2), April 1983, 231–258.
- J. S. VITTER AND W.-C. CHEN [1987]. *Design and Analysis of Coalesced Hashing*. Oxford University Press, New York, 1987.
- J. S. VITTER AND E. A. M. SHRIVER [1990]. *Optimal I/O with Parallel Block Transfer, Proceedings of the 22nd Annual Symposium on Theory of Computing*, Baltimore, MD, May 1990.
- J. VUILLEMIN [1980]. “A Unifying Look at Data Structures,” *Communications of the ACM* **23**(4), April 1980, 229–239.

M. A. WEISS AND R. SEDGEWICK [1988]. "Tight Lower Bounds for Shellsort," Technical Report CS-TR-137-88, Princeton University, February 1988.

A. C.-C. YAO [1976]. "On the Average Behavior of Set Merging Algorithms," *Proceedings of the 8th Annual ACM Symposium on Theory of Computing*, 1976, 192-195.

A. C.-C. YAO [1978]. "On Random 2-3 Trees," *Acta Informatica* **9**(2), 1978, 159-170.

A. C.-C. YAO [1980]. "An Analysis of  $(h, k, 1)$  Shellsort," *Journal of Algorithms* **1**(1), 1980, 14-50.

A. C.-C. YAO [1988]. "On Straight Selection Sort," Technical Report CS-TR-185-88, Princeton University, October 1988.

A. C.-C. YAO AND F. F. YAO [1976]. "The Complexity of Searching an Ordered Random Table," *Proceedings of the 17th Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science*, Houston, October 1976, 173-177.

F. F. YAO [1989]. "Computational Geometry," in this handbook.

## Index and Glossary

Each index term is followed by a list of the sections relevant to that term. If a large number of sections are relevant, only one or two sections are included, typically where that term is first defined or used.

- Admissible constructions, 1, 4, 5.1.
- Analysis of algorithms, 0.
  - asymptotics, 2.
  - average case, 0.
  - dynamic, 6.
  - enumerations, 0,1.
  - hashing, 5, 6.2.
  - sorting, 3, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1.
  - searching, 4, 5, 6.
  - trees, 1, 2, 3.7, 4, 6.1, 6.3.
- Analytic function, 2.
- Asymptotic analysis, 2.
- Average-case complexity, 0.
- Binary trees, 1, 4.1.
- Binary search trees, 3.7, 4.2, 6.1, 6.3.
- Bubble sort, 3.4.
- Bucket algorithms, 5.1, 6.2.
- Characteristic functions, 2.5.
- Coalesced hashing, 5.1.
- Combinatorial enumerations, 0,1.
- Complex analysis, 2.
- Complexity measure, 0.
- Continued fractions, 6.1.
- Counting, 1.
- Darboux's method, 2.2.
- Data model, 0.
- Data structures, 0.
- Digital search, 4.3, 4.4, 5.1.
- Direct chaining, 5.1.
- Distribution sort, 5.1.
- Double hashing, 5.2.
- Dynamic data model, 6.
- Enumerations, 0,1.
- Extendible hashing, 5.1.
- Euler-Maclaurin summation formula, 2.1.
- Fourier transforms, 2.5.
- Functional equations, 0, 1.4, 2.2.
- Generating function (GF), 0, 1.
  - exponential generating function (EGF), 1.3.
  - ordinary generating function (OGF), 1.2.
- Hash function, 5.
- Hashing, 5, 6.2.
  - coalesced hashing, 5.1.
  - extendible hashing, 5.1.
  - hashing with lazy deletion, 6.2.
  - direct chaining, 5.1.
  - double hashing, 5.2.
  - linear probing, 5.2.
  - maximum bucket occupancy, 5.1, 6.2.
  - open addressing, 5.2.
  - separate chaining, 5.1.
- Heaps, 3.7, 4.2, 6.1.
- Heapsort, 3.7.
- History model, 6.1, 6.2.
- Insertion sort, 3.2.
- Integrated cost, 6.1.
- Interpolation search, 5.1.

- Inversions, 3.
- $k$ -d trees, 4.2.
- Labeled combinatorial structures, 1.3.
- Lagrange-Bürmann inversion, 1.4, 4.1, 5.2.
- Laplace's method, 2.1.
- Laplace transforms, 2.5.
- Limit distribution, 2.5, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1.
- Linear probing, 5.2.
- Load factor, 5.1, 5.2.
- Maximum bucket occupancy, 5.1, 6.2.
- Maximum size of data structures, 5.1, 6.2.
- Mellin transforms, 2.4, 3.4, 4.1, 4.3, 5.1.
- Merge sort, 3.3, 3.8.
- Meromorphic functions, 2.2, 2.4.
- Moment generating functions, 2.5.
- Multidimensional search, 4.2.
- Networks, 3.3, 3.8.
- Occupancy distribution, 5.1, 6.2.
- Open addressing, 5.2.
- Path length, 4.
- Patricia tries, 4.3.
- Pattern matching, 4.1.
- Permutations, 1.3, 3.
- Priority queues, 3.7, 4.2, 6.1, 6.2.
- Probabilistic analysis, 6.3.
- Quad trees, 4.2.
- Quicksort, 3.5, 4.2.
- Radix-Exchange sort, 3.6, 4.3.
- Register allocation, 4.1.
- Saddle point method, 2.3, 2.5, 5.1.
- Searching, 4, 5, 6.
- Search trees, 3.7, 4.2, 6.1, 6.3.
- Selection sort, 3.7.
- Separate chaining, 5.1.
- Set union-find, 6.3.
- Shellsort, 3.3.
- Singularity, 2.2.
- Sorting, 3, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1.
  - bubble sort, 3.4.
  - distribution sort, 5.1.
  - heapsort, 3.7.
  - insertion sort, 3.2.
  - merge sort, 3.3, 3.8.
  - networks, 3.3, 3.8.
  - quicksort, 3.5, 4.2.
  - radix-exchange sort, 3.6, 4.3.
  - selection sort, 3.7.
  - Shellsort, 3.3.
- Stirling numbers, 1.3, 1.4.
- Stirling's formula, 2.1, 2.3.
- Symbolic differentiation, 4.1.
- Tauberian theorems, 2.2.
- Taylor expansion, 1.1, 1.4.
- Transfer lemma, 2.2, 4.1, 4.2.
- Trees, 1, 2, 3.7, 4, 6.1, 6.3.
- Tree compaction, 4.1.
- Tries, 4.3, 5.1.
- Urn model, 1.3, 5.1.
- Valuation function (VF), 4.